

# Verifying Imperative Programs using Auto2

Bohua Zhan

May 26, 2024

## **Abstract**

This entry contains the application of auto2 to verifying functional and imperative programs. Algorithms and data structures that are verified include linked lists, binary search trees, red-black trees, interval trees, priority queue, quicksort, union-find, Dijkstra's algorithm, and a sweep-line algorithm for detecting rectangle intersection. The imperative verification is based on Imperative HOL and its separation logic framework. A major goal of this work is to set up automation in order to reduce the length of proof that the user needs to provide, both for verifying functional programs and for working with separation logic.

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Mapping</b>	<b>7</b>
2.1	Map from an AList . . . . .	8
2.2	Mapping defined by a set of key-value pairs . . . . .	8
2.3	Set of keys of a mapping . . . . .	9
2.4	Minimum of a mapping, relevant for heaps (priority queues) .	10
2.5	General construction and update of maps . . . . .	10
<b>3</b>	<b>Lists</b>	<b>10</b>
3.1	Linear time version of rev . . . . .	11
3.2	Strict sorted . . . . .	11
3.3	Ordered insert . . . . .	11
3.4	Deleting an element . . . . .	12
3.5	Ordered insertion into list of pairs . . . . .	12
3.6	Deleting from a list of pairs . . . . .	13
3.7	Search in a list of pairs . . . . .	14
<b>4</b>	<b>Binary search tree</b>	<b>14</b>
4.1	Definition and setup for trees . . . . .	14
4.2	Inorder traversal, and set of elements of a tree . . . . .	14
4.3	Sortedness on trees . . . . .	15
4.4	Rotation on trees . . . . .	15
4.5	Insertion on trees . . . . .	16
4.6	Deletion on trees . . . . .	16
4.7	Search on sorted trees . . . . .	17
<b>5</b>	<b>Partial equivalence relation</b>	<b>17</b>
5.1	Combining two elements in a partial equivalence relation . . .	18
<b>6</b>	<b>Union find</b>	<b>18</b>
6.1	Representing a partial equivalence relation using rep_of array	18
6.2	Operations on rep_of array . . . . .	20
<b>7</b>	<b>Connectedness for a set of undirected edges.</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>Arrays</b>	<b>23</b>
8.1	List swap . . . . .	23
8.2	Reverse . . . . .	23
8.3	Copy one array to the beginning of another . . . . .	24
8.4	Sublist . . . . .	24
8.5	Updating a set of elements in an array . . . . .	25

<b>9</b>	<b>Dijkstra’s algorithm for shortest paths</b>	<b>26</b>
9.1	Graphs . . . . .	26
9.2	Paths on graphs . . . . .	26
9.3	Shortest paths . . . . .	28
9.4	Interior points . . . . .	28
9.5	Two splitting lemmas . . . . .	29
9.6	Deriving <code>has_dist</code> and <code>has_dist_on</code> . . . . .	30
9.7	Invariant for the Dijkstra’s algorithm . . . . .	30
9.8	Starting state . . . . .	31
9.9	Step of Dijkstra’s algorithm . . . . .	32
<b>10</b>	<b>Intervals</b>	<b>33</b>
10.1	Definition of interval . . . . .	33
10.2	Definition of interval with an index . . . . .	33
10.3	Overlapping intervals . . . . .	33
<b>11</b>	<b>Interval tree</b>	<b>34</b>
11.1	Definition of an interval tree . . . . .	34
11.2	Inorder traversal, and set of elements of a tree . . . . .	34
11.3	Invariant on the maximum . . . . .	35
11.4	Condition on the values . . . . .	35
11.5	Insertion on trees . . . . .	36
11.6	Deletion on trees . . . . .	36
11.7	Search on interval trees . . . . .	38
<b>12</b>	<b>Quicksort</b>	<b>38</b>
12.1	Outer remains . . . . .	38
12.2	<code>part1</code> function . . . . .	39
12.3	Partition function . . . . .	39
12.4	Quicksort function . . . . .	40
<b>13</b>	<b>Indexed priority queues</b>	<b>41</b>
13.1	Successor functions, <code>eq-pred</code> predicate . . . . .	41
13.2	Heap property . . . . .	42
13.3	Bubble-down . . . . .	42
13.4	Bubble-up . . . . .	43
13.5	Indexed priority queue . . . . .	43
13.6	Basic operations on <code>indexed_queue</code> . . . . .	44
13.7	Bubble up and down . . . . .	45
13.8	Main operations . . . . .	46

<b>14 Red-black trees</b>	<b>48</b>
14.1 Definition of RBT	48
14.2 RBT invariants	48
14.3 Balancedness of RBT	49
14.4 Definition and basic properties of <code>cl_inv'</code>	49
14.5 Set of keys, sortedness	50
14.6 Balance function	50
14.7 ins function	52
14.8 Paint function	52
14.9 Insert function	53
14.10 Search on sorted trees and its correctness	53
14.11 <code>balL</code> and <code>balR</code>	53
14.12 <code>Combine</code>	54
14.13 <code>Deletion</code>	55
<b>15 Rectangle intersection</b>	<b>56</b>
15.1 Definition of rectangles	56
15.2 <code>INS</code> / <code>DEL</code> operations	57
15.3 Set of operations corresponding to a list of rectangles	58
15.4 Applying a set of operations	59
15.5 Implementation of <code>apply_ops_k</code>	60
<b>16 Separation logic</b>	<b>61</b>
16.1 Partial Heaps	61
16.2 Assertions	62
16.2.1 Existential Quantification	64
16.2.2 Pointers	64
16.2.3 Pure Assertions	65
16.2.4 Properties of assertions	65
16.2.5 Entailment and its properties	65
16.3 Definition of the run predicate	66
16.4 Definition of hoare triple, and the frame rule.	66
16.5 Hoare triples for atomic commands	67
16.6 Definition of procedures	69
<b>17 Implementation of linked list</b>	<b>71</b>
17.1 List Assertion	71
17.2 Basic operations	72
17.3 Reverse	72
17.4 Remove	73
17.5 Extract list	73
17.6 Ordered insert	73
17.7 Insertion sort	74
17.8 Merging two lists	75

17.9 List copy . . . . .	76
17.10 Higher-order functions . . . . .	76
<b>18 Implementation of binary search tree</b>	<b>77</b>
18.1 Tree nodes . . . . .	78
18.2 Operations . . . . .	78
18.2.1 Basic operations . . . . .	78
18.2.2 Insertion . . . . .	79
18.2.3 Deletion . . . . .	79
18.2.4 Search . . . . .	81
18.3 Outer interface . . . . .	81
<b>19 Implementation of red-black tree</b>	<b>81</b>
19.1 Tree nodes . . . . .	82
19.2 Operations . . . . .	82
19.2.1 Basic operations . . . . .	82
19.2.2 Rotation . . . . .	84
19.2.3 Balance . . . . .	85
19.2.4 Insertion . . . . .	86
19.2.5 Search . . . . .	87
19.2.6 Delete . . . . .	87
19.3 Outer interface . . . . .	91
<b>20 Implementation of arrays</b>	<b>92</b>
20.1 Array copy . . . . .	92
20.2 Swap . . . . .	92
20.3 Reverse . . . . .	92
<b>21 Implementation of quicksort</b>	<b>93</b>
<b>22 Implementation of union find</b>	<b>95</b>
<b>23 Implementation of connectivity on graphs</b>	<b>97</b>
23.1 Constructing the connected relation . . . . .	97
23.2 Connectedness tests . . . . .	98
<b>24 Implementation of dynamic arrays</b>	<b>98</b>
24.1 Raw assertion . . . . .	98
24.2 Abstract assertion . . . . .	101
24.3 Derived operations . . . . .	102
<b>25 Implementation of the indexed priority queue</b>	<b>102</b>
25.1 Basic operations . . . . .	103
25.2 Bubble up and down . . . . .	105
25.3 Main operations . . . . .	106

25.4	Outer interface . . . . .	107
<b>26</b>	<b>Implementation of Dijkstra's algorithm</b>	<b>108</b>
26.1	Basic operations . . . . .	108
26.2	Main operations . . . . .	110
<b>27</b>	<b>Implementation of interval tree</b>	<b>111</b>
27.1	Interval and IdxInterval . . . . .	112
27.2	Tree nodes . . . . .	112
27.3	Operations . . . . .	113
27.3.1	Basic operation . . . . .	113
27.3.2	Insertion . . . . .	114
27.3.3	Deletion . . . . .	114
27.3.4	Search . . . . .	116
27.4	Outer interface . . . . .	116
<b>28</b>	<b>Implementation of rectangle intersection</b>	<b>117</b>
28.1	Operations . . . . .	117
28.2	Initial state . . . . .	117

# 1 Introduction

This AFP entry contains the applications of auto2 to verifying functional and imperative programs. These examples are published in [9].

- Functional programs (in directory Functional): we verify several functional algorithms and data structures, including: linked lists, binary search trees, red-black trees, interval trees, priority queue, quicksort, union-find, Dijkstra's algorithm, and a sweep-line algorithm for detecting rectangle intersection.
- Imperative programs (in directory Imperative): we verify imperative versions of the above algorithms and data structures, using Isabelle's Imperative HOL framework [1]. We make use of separation logic, following the framework set up by Lammich and Reis [5]. The general outline of some of the examples also come from there.

## 2 Mapping

```
theory Mapping-Str
imports Auto2-HOL.Auto2-Main
begin
```

Basic definitions of a mapping. Here, we enclose the mapping inside a structure, to make evaluation a first-order concept.

```
datatype ('a, 'b) map = Map 'a  $\Rightarrow$  'b option
```

```
fun meval :: ('a, 'b) map  $\Rightarrow$  'a  $\Rightarrow$  'b option (-<-) [90] where
  (Map f) <h> = f h
<ML>
```

```
lemma meval-ext:  $\forall x. M\langle x \rangle = N\langle x \rangle \Longrightarrow M = N$ 
  <proof>
<ML>
```

```
definition empty-map :: ('a, 'b) map where
  empty-map = Map ( $\lambda x. \text{None}$ )
<ML>
```

```
definition update-map :: ('a, 'b) map  $\Rightarrow$  'a  $\Rightarrow$  'b  $\Rightarrow$  ('a, 'b) map ( - { -  $\rightarrow$  - }
[89,90,90] 90) where
  M {k  $\rightarrow$  v} = Map ( $\lambda x. \text{if } x = k \text{ then Some } v \text{ else } M\langle x \rangle$ )
<ML>
```

```
definition delete-map :: 'a  $\Rightarrow$  ('a, 'b) map  $\Rightarrow$  ('a, 'b) map where
  delete-map k M = Map ( $\lambda x. \text{if } x = k \text{ then None else } M\langle x \rangle$ )
<ML>
```

## 2.1 Map from an AList

**fun** *map-of-alist* :: ('a × 'b) list ⇒ ('a, 'b) map **where**  
*map-of-alist* [] = *empty-map*  
| *map-of-alist* (x # xs) = (*map-of-alist* xs) {fst x → snd x}  
⟨ML⟩

**definition** *has-key-alist* :: ('a × 'b) list ⇒ 'a ⇒ bool **where** [*rewrite*]:  
*has-key-alist* xs a ⇔ (∃ p ∈ set xs. fst p = a)

**lemma** *map-of-alist-nil* [*rewrite-back*]:  
*has-key-alist* ys x ⇔ (*map-of-alist* ys)⟨x⟩ ≠ None  
⟨proof⟩  
⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *map-of-alist-some* [*forward*]:  
(*map-of-alist* xs)⟨k⟩ = Some v ⇒ (k, v) ∈ set xs  
⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *map-of-alist-nil'*:  
x ∈ set (map fst ys) ⇔ (*map-of-alist* ys)⟨x⟩ ≠ None  
⟨proof⟩  
⟨ML⟩

## 2.2 Mapping defined by a set of key-value pairs

**definition** *unique-keys-set* :: ('a × 'b) set ⇒ bool **where** [*rewrite*]:  
*unique-keys-set* S = (∀ i x y. (i, x) ∈ S ⇒ (i, y) ∈ S ⇒ x = y)

**lemma** *unique-keys-setD* [*forward*]: *unique-keys-set* S ⇒ (i, x) ∈ S ⇒ (i, y) ∈ S ⇒ x = y  
⟨proof⟩  
⟨ML⟩

**definition** *map-of-aset* :: ('a × 'b) set ⇒ ('a, 'b) map **where**  
*map-of-aset* S = Map (λa. if ∃ b. (a, b) ∈ S then Some (THE b. (a, b) ∈ S) else None)  
⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *map-of-asetI1* [*rewrite*]: *unique-keys-set* S ⇒ (a, b) ∈ S ⇒ (*map-of-aset* S)⟨a⟩ = Some b  
⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *map-of-asetI2* [*rewrite*]: ∀ b. (a, b) ∉ S ⇒ (*map-of-aset* S)⟨a⟩ = None  
⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *map-of-asetD1* [*forward*]: (*map-of-aset* S)⟨a⟩ = None ⇒ ∀ b. (a, b) ∉ S  
⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *map-of-asetD2* [*forward*]:  
*unique-keys-set* S ⇒ (*map-of-aset* S)⟨a⟩ = Some b ⇒ (a, b) ∈ S  
⟨proof⟩



$\langle ML \rangle$

**lemma** *map-of-aset-insert* [rewrite]:

$unique\text{-keys-set } (S \cup \{(k, v)\}) \implies map\text{-of-aset } (S \cup \{(k, v)\}) = (map\text{-of-aset } S) \{k \rightarrow v\}$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *map-of-alist-to-aset* [rewrite]:

$unique\text{-keys-set } (set\ xs) \implies map\text{-of-aset } (set\ xs) = map\text{-of-alist } xs$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *map-of-aset-delete* [rewrite]:

$unique\text{-keys-set } S \implies (k, v) \in S \implies map\text{-of-aset } (S - \{(k, v)\}) = delete\text{-map } k (map\text{-of-aset } S)$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *map-of-aset-update* [rewrite]:

$unique\text{-keys-set } S \implies (k, v) \in S \implies map\text{-of-aset } (S - \{(k, v)\} \cup \{(k, v')\}) = (map\text{-of-aset } S) \{k \rightarrow v'\}$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *map-of-alist-delete* [rewrite]:

$set\ xs' = set\ xs - \{x\} \implies unique\text{-keys-set } (set\ xs) \implies x \in set\ xs \implies map\text{-of-alist } xs' = delete\text{-map } (fst\ x) (map\text{-of-alist } xs)$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *map-of-alist-insert* [rewrite]:

$set\ xs' = set\ xs \cup \{x\} \implies unique\text{-keys-set } (set\ xs') \implies map\text{-of-alist } xs' = (map\text{-of-alist } xs) \{fst\ x \rightarrow snd\ x\}$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *map-of-alist-update* [rewrite]:

$set\ xs' = set\ xs - \{(k, v)\} \cup \{(k, v')\} \implies unique\text{-keys-set } (set\ xs) \implies (k, v) \in set\ xs \implies map\text{-of-alist } xs' = (map\text{-of-alist } xs) \{k \rightarrow v'\}$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

## 2.3 Set of keys of a mapping

**definition** *keys-of* :: ('a, 'b) map  $\Rightarrow$  'a set **where** [rewrite]:

$keys\text{-of } M = \{x. M\langle x \rangle \neq None\}$

**lemma** *keys-of-iff* [rewrite-bidir]:  $x \in keys\text{-of } M \iff M\langle x \rangle \neq None$   $\langle proof \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

**lemma** *keys-of-empty* [rewrite]:  $keys\text{-of } empty\text{-map} = \{\}$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *keys-of-delete* [rewrite]:

$keys\text{-of } (delete\text{-map } x\ M) = keys\text{-of } M - \{x\}$   $\langle proof \rangle$

## 2.4 Minimum of a mapping, relevant for heaps (priority queues)

**definition** *is-heap-min* :: 'a ⇒ ('a, 'b::linorder) map ⇒ bool **where** [rewrite]:  
*is-heap-min* x M ⇔ x ∈ keys-of M ∧ (∀ k ∈ keys-of M. the (M⟨x⟩) ≤ the (M⟨k⟩))

## 2.5 General construction and update of maps

**fun** *map-constr* :: (nat ⇒ bool) ⇒ (nat ⇒ 'a) ⇒ nat ⇒ (nat, 'a) map **where**  
*map-constr* S f 0 = empty-map  
| *map-constr* S f (Suc k) = (let M = *map-constr* S f k in if S k then M {k → f k} else M)  
⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *map-constr-eval* [rewrite]:  
*map-constr* S f n = Map (λi. if i < n then if S i then Some (f i) else None else None)  
⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *keys-of-map-constr* [rewrite]:  
i ∈ keys-of (map-constr S f n) ⇔ (S i ∧ i < n) ⟨proof⟩

**definition** *map-update-all* :: (nat ⇒ 'a) ⇒ (nat, 'a) map ⇒ (nat, 'a) map **where** [rewrite]:  
*map-update-all* f M = Map (λi. if i ∈ keys-of M then Some (f i) else M⟨i⟩)

**fun** *map-update-all-impl* :: (nat ⇒ 'a) ⇒ (nat, 'a) map ⇒ nat ⇒ (nat, 'a) map **where**  
*map-update-all-impl* f M 0 = M  
| *map-update-all-impl* f M (Suc k) =  
(let M' = *map-update-all-impl* f M k in if k ∈ keys-of M then M' {k → f k} else M')  
⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *map-update-all-impl-ind* [rewrite]:  
*map-update-all-impl* f M n = Map (λi. if i < n then if i ∈ keys-of M then Some (f i) else None else M⟨i⟩)  
⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *map-update-all-impl-correct* [rewrite]:  
∀ i ∈ keys-of M. i < n ⇒ *map-update-all-impl* f M n = *map-update-all* f M ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *keys-of-map-update-all* [rewrite]:  
keys-of (map-update-all f M) = keys-of M ⟨proof⟩

**end**

## 3 Lists

**theory** *Lists-Ex*

```

imports Mapping-Str
begin

```

Examples on lists. The `itrev` example comes from [7, Section 2.4].

The development here of insertion and deletion on lists is essential for verifying functional binary search trees and red-black trees. The idea, following Nipkow [6], is that showing sorted-ness and preservation of multisets for trees should be done on the in-order traversal of the tree.

### 3.1 Linear time version of `rev`

```

fun itrev :: 'a list ⇒ 'a list ⇒ 'a list where
  itrev [] ys = ys
| itrev (x # xs) ys = itrev xs (x # ys)
⟨ML⟩

```

```

lemma itrev-eq-rev: itrev x [] = rev x
⟨proof⟩

```

### 3.2 Strict sorted

```

fun strict-sorted :: 'a::linorder list ⇒ bool where
  strict-sorted [] = True
| strict-sorted (x # ys) = ((∀ y∈set ys. x < y) ∧ strict-sorted ys)
⟨ML⟩

```

```

lemma strict-sorted-appendI [backward]:
  strict-sorted xs ∧ strict-sorted ys ∧ (∀ x∈set xs. ∀ y∈set ys. x < y) ⇒ strict-sorted
(xs @ ys)
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma strict-sorted-appendE1 [forward]:
  strict-sorted (xs @ ys) ⇒ strict-sorted xs ∧ strict-sorted ys
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma strict-sorted-appendE2 [forward]:
  strict-sorted (xs @ ys) ⇒ x ∈ set xs ⇒ ∀ y∈set ys. x < y
⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma strict-sorted-distinct [forward]: strict-sorted l ⇒ distinct l
⟨proof⟩

```

### 3.3 Ordered insert

```

fun ordered-insert :: 'a::ord ⇒ 'a list ⇒ 'a list where
  ordered-insert x [] = [x]
| ordered-insert x (y # ys) = (
  if x = y then (y # ys)
  else if x < y then x # (y # ys)

```

else  $y \# \text{ordered-insert } x \text{ } ys$ )  
 ⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *ordered-insert-set* [rewrite]:  
 $\text{set } (\text{ordered-insert } x \text{ } ys) = \{x\} \cup \text{set } ys$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *ordered-insert-sorted* [forward]:  
 $\text{strict-sorted } ys \implies \text{strict-sorted } (\text{ordered-insert } x \text{ } ys)$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *ordered-insert-binary* [rewrite]:  
 $\text{strict-sorted } (xs @ a \# ys) \implies \text{ordered-insert } x \text{ } (xs @ a \# ys) =$   
 (if  $x < a$  then  $\text{ordered-insert } x \text{ } xs @ a \# ys$   
 else if  $x > a$  then  $xs @ a \# \text{ordered-insert } x \text{ } ys$   
 else  $xs @ a \# ys$ )  
 ⟨proof⟩

### 3.4 Deleting an element

**fun** *remove-elt-list* :: 'a ⇒ 'a list ⇒ 'a list **where**  
 $\text{remove-elt-list } x \text{ } [] = []$   
 $| \text{remove-elt-list } x \text{ } (y \# ys) = (\text{if } y = x \text{ then } \text{remove-elt-list } x \text{ } ys \text{ else } y \# \text{remove-elt-list } x \text{ } ys)$   
 ⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *remove-elt-list-set* [rewrite]:  
 $\text{set } (\text{remove-elt-list } x \text{ } ys) = \text{set } ys - \{x\}$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *remove-elt-list-sorted* [forward]:  
 $\text{strict-sorted } ys \implies \text{strict-sorted } (\text{remove-elt-list } x \text{ } ys)$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *remove-elt-idem* [rewrite]:  
 $x \notin \text{set } ys \implies \text{remove-elt-list } x \text{ } ys = ys$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *remove-elt-list-binary* [rewrite]:  
 $\text{strict-sorted } (xs @ a \# ys) \implies \text{remove-elt-list } x \text{ } (xs @ a \# ys) =$   
 (if  $x < a$  then  $\text{remove-elt-list } x \text{ } xs @ a \# ys$   
 else if  $x > a$  then  $xs @ a \# \text{remove-elt-list } x \text{ } ys$  else  $xs @ a \# ys$ )  
 ⟨proof⟩

### 3.5 Ordered insertion into list of pairs

**fun** *ordered-insert-pairs* :: 'a::ord ⇒ 'b ⇒ ('a × 'b) list ⇒ ('a × 'b) list **where**  
 $\text{ordered-insert-pairs } x \text{ } v \text{ } [] = [(x, v)]$   
 $| \text{ordered-insert-pairs } x \text{ } v \text{ } (y \# ys) = ($   
 if  $x = \text{fst } y$  then  $((x, v) \# ys)$

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{else if } x < \text{fst } y \text{ then } (x, v) \# (y \# ys) \\ & \text{else } y \# \text{ordered-insert-pairs } x \ v \ ys) \end{aligned}$$
 <ML>

**lemma** *ordered-insert-pairs-map* [rewrite]:  

$$\text{map-of-alist } (\text{ordered-insert-pairs } x \ v \ ys) = \text{update-map } (\text{map-of-alist } ys) \ x \ v$$
 <proof>

**lemma** *ordered-insert-pairs-set* [rewrite]:  

$$\text{set } (\text{map } \text{fst } (\text{ordered-insert-pairs } x \ v \ ys)) = \{x\} \cup \text{set } (\text{map } \text{fst } ys)$$
 <proof>

**lemma** *ordered-insert-pairs-sorted* [backward]:  

$$\text{strict-sorted } (\text{map } \text{fst } ys) \implies \text{strict-sorted } (\text{map } \text{fst } (\text{ordered-insert-pairs } x \ v \ ys))$$
 <proof>

**lemma** *ordered-insert-pairs-binary* [rewrite]:  

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{strict-sorted } (\text{map } \text{fst } (xs \ @ \ a \ \# \ ys)) \implies \text{ordered-insert-pairs } x \ v \ (xs \ @ \ a \ \# \ ys) \\ & = \\ & \quad (\text{if } x < \text{fst } a \ \text{then } \text{ordered-insert-pairs } x \ v \ xs \ @ \ a \ \# \ ys \\ & \quad \text{else if } x > \text{fst } a \ \text{then } xs \ @ \ a \ \# \ \text{ordered-insert-pairs } x \ v \ ys \\ & \quad \text{else } xs \ @ \ (x, v) \ \# \ ys) \end{aligned}$$
 <proof>

### 3.6 Deleting from a list of pairs

**fun** *remove-elt-pairs* :: 'a  $\Rightarrow$  ('a  $\times$  'b) list  $\Rightarrow$  ('a  $\times$  'b) list **where**  

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{remove-elt-pairs } x \ [] = [] \\ & | \text{remove-elt-pairs } x \ (y \ \# \ ys) = (\text{if } \text{fst } y = x \ \text{then } ys \ \text{else } y \ \# \ \text{remove-elt-pairs } x \ ys) \end{aligned}$$
 <ML>

**lemma** *remove-elt-pairs-map* [rewrite]:  

$$\text{strict-sorted } (\text{map } \text{fst } ys) \implies \text{map-of-alist } (\text{remove-elt-pairs } x \ ys) = \text{delete-map } x \ (\text{map-of-alist } ys)$$
 <proof>

**lemma** *remove-elt-pairs-on-set* [rewrite]:  

$$\text{strict-sorted } (\text{map } \text{fst } ys) \implies \text{set } (\text{map } \text{fst } (\text{remove-elt-pairs } x \ ys)) = \text{set } (\text{map } \text{fst } ys) - \{x\}$$
 <proof>

**lemma** *remove-elt-pairs-sorted* [backward]:  

$$\text{strict-sorted } (\text{map } \text{fst } ys) \implies \text{strict-sorted } (\text{map } \text{fst } (\text{remove-elt-pairs } x \ ys))$$
 <proof>

**lemma** *remove-elt-pairs-idem* [rewrite]:  

$$x \notin \text{set } (\text{map } \text{fst } ys) \implies \text{remove-elt-pairs } x \ ys = ys$$
 <proof>

**lemma** *remove-elt-pairs-binary* [rewrite]:  
 $strict\text{-sorted } (map\ fst\ (xs\ @\ a\ \#\ ys)) \implies remove\text{-elt-pairs } x\ (xs\ @\ a\ \#\ ys) =$   
*(if*  $x < fst\ a$  *then*  $remove\text{-elt-pairs } x\ xs\ @\ a\ \#\ ys$   
*else if*  $x > fst\ a$  *then*  $xs\ @\ a\ \#\ remove\text{-elt-pairs } x\ ys$  *else*  $xs\ @\ ys$ )  
 <proof>

### 3.7 Search in a list of pairs

**lemma** *map-of-alist-binary* [rewrite]:  
 $strict\text{-sorted } (map\ fst\ (xs\ @\ a\ \#\ ys)) \implies (map\text{-of-alist } (xs\ @\ a\ \#\ ys))\langle x \rangle =$   
*(if*  $x < fst\ a$  *then*  $(map\text{-of-alist } xs)\langle x \rangle$   
*else if*  $x > fst\ a$  *then*  $(map\text{-of-alist } ys)\langle x \rangle$  *else*  $Some\ (snd\ a)$ )  
 <proof>

end

## 4 Binary search tree

**theory** *BST*  
**imports** *Lists-Ex*  
**begin**

Verification of functional programs on binary search trees. For basic technique, see comments in *Lists\_Ex.thy*.

### 4.1 Definition and setup for trees

**datatype** ('a, 'b) *tree* =  
 $Tip \mid Node\ (lsub:\ ('a,\ 'b)\ tree)\ (key:\ 'a)\ (nval:\ 'b)\ (rsub:\ ('a,\ 'b)\ tree)$   
 <ML>

### 4.2 Inorder traversal, and set of elements of a tree

**fun** *in-traverse* :: ('a, 'b) *tree*  $\Rightarrow$  'a *list* **where**  
 $in\text{-traverse } Tip = []$   
 $| in\text{-traverse } (Node\ l\ k\ v\ r) = in\text{-traverse } l\ @\ k\ \#\ in\text{-traverse } r$   
 <ML>

**fun** *tree-set* :: ('a, 'b) *tree*  $\Rightarrow$  'a *set* **where**  
 $tree\text{-set } Tip = \{\}$   
 $| tree\text{-set } (Node\ l\ k\ v\ r) = \{k\} \cup tree\text{-set } l \cup tree\text{-set } r$   
 <ML>

**fun** *in-traverse-pairs* :: ('a, 'b) *tree*  $\Rightarrow$  ('a  $\times$  'b) *list* **where**  
 $in\text{-traverse-pairs } Tip = []$   
 $| in\text{-traverse-pairs } (Node\ l\ k\ v\ r) = in\text{-traverse-pairs } l\ @\ (k,\ v)\ \#\ in\text{-traverse-pairs } r$   
 <ML>

**lemma** *in-traverse-fst* [*rewrite*]:  
 $\text{map fst (in-traverse-pairs } t) = \text{in-traverse } t$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**definition** *tree-map* :: ('a, 'b) tree  $\Rightarrow$  ('a, 'b) map **where**  
 $\text{tree-map } t = \text{map-of-alist (in-traverse-pairs } t)$   
 ⟨*ML*⟩

### 4.3 Sortedness on trees

**fun** *tree-sorted* :: ('a::linorder, 'b) tree  $\Rightarrow$  bool **where**  
 $\text{tree-sorted Tip} = \text{True}$   
 $| \text{tree-sorted (Node } l \ k \ v \ r) = ((\forall x \in \text{tree-set } l. x < k) \wedge (\forall x \in \text{tree-set } r. k < x))$   
 $\quad \wedge \text{tree-sorted } l \wedge \text{tree-sorted } r$   
 ⟨*ML*⟩

**lemma** *tree-sorted-lr* [*forward*]:  
 $\text{tree-sorted (Node } l \ k \ v \ r) \Longrightarrow \text{tree-sorted } l \wedge \text{tree-sorted } r$  ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *inorder-preserve-set* [*rewrite*]:  
 $\text{tree-set } t = \text{set (in-traverse } t)$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *inorder-pairs-sorted* [*rewrite*]:  
 $\text{tree-sorted } t \longleftrightarrow \text{strict-sorted (map fst (in-traverse-pairs } t))$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

Use definition in terms of `in_traverse` from now on.

⟨*ML*⟩

### 4.4 Rotation on trees

**definition** *rotateL* :: ('a, 'b) tree  $\Rightarrow$  ('a, 'b) tree **where** [*rewrite*]:  
 $\text{rotateL } t = (\text{if } t = \text{Tip} \text{ then } t \text{ else if } \text{rsub } t = \text{Tip} \text{ then } t \text{ else}$   
 $\quad (\text{let } rt = \text{rsub } t \text{ in}$   
 $\quad \text{Node (Node (lsub } t) (\text{key } t) (\text{nval } t) (\text{lsub } rt)) (\text{key } rt) (\text{nval } rt) (\text{rsub } rt)))$

**definition** *rotateR* :: ('a, 'b) tree  $\Rightarrow$  ('a, 'b) tree **where** [*rewrite*]:  
 $\text{rotateR } t = (\text{if } t = \text{Tip} \text{ then } t \text{ else if } \text{lsub } t = \text{Tip} \text{ then } t \text{ else}$   
 $\quad (\text{let } lt = \text{lsub } t \text{ in}$   
 $\quad \text{Node (lsub } lt) (\text{key } lt) (\text{nval } lt) (\text{Node (rsub } lt) (\text{key } t) (\text{nval } t) (\text{rsub } t))))$

**lemma** *rotateL-in-trav* [*rewrite*]:  $\text{in-traverse (rotateL } t) = \text{in-traverse } t$  ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *rotateR-in-trav* [*rewrite*]:  $\text{in-traverse (rotateR } t) = \text{in-traverse } t$  ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *rotateL-sorted* [*forward*]:  $\text{tree-sorted } t \Longrightarrow \text{tree-sorted (rotateL } t)$  ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *rotateR-sorted* [*forward*]:  $\text{tree-sorted } t \Longrightarrow \text{tree-sorted (rotateR } t)$  ⟨*proof*⟩

## 4.5 Insertion on trees

**fun** *tree-insert* :: 'a::ord  $\Rightarrow$  'b  $\Rightarrow$  ('a, 'b) tree  $\Rightarrow$  ('a, 'b) tree **where**  
*tree-insert* x v Tip = Node Tip x v Tip  
| *tree-insert* x v (Node l y w r) =  
    (if x = y then Node l x v r  
    else if x < y then Node (tree-insert x v l) y w r  
    else Node l y w (tree-insert x v r))  
⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *insert-in-traverse-pairs* [rewrite]:  
*tree-sorted* t  $\Longrightarrow$  *in-traverse-pairs* (tree-insert x v t) = *ordered-insert-pairs* x v  
(*in-traverse-pairs* t)  
⟨proof⟩

Correctness results for insertion.

**theorem** *insert-sorted* [forward]:  
*tree-sorted* t  $\Longrightarrow$  *tree-sorted* (tree-insert x v t) ⟨proof⟩

**theorem** *insert-on-map*:  
*tree-sorted* t  $\Longrightarrow$  *tree-map* (tree-insert x v t) = (tree-map t) {x  $\rightarrow$  v} ⟨proof⟩

## 4.6 Deletion on trees

**fun** *del-min* :: ('a, 'b) tree  $\Rightarrow$  ('a  $\times$  'b)  $\times$  ('a, 'b) tree **where**  
*del-min* Tip = undefined  
| *del-min* (Node lt x v rt) =  
    (if lt = Tip then ((x, v), rt) else  
    (fst (del-min lt), Node (snd (del-min lt)) x v rt))  
⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *delete-min-del-hd-pairs* [rewrite]:  
t  $\neq$  Tip  $\Longrightarrow$  fst (del-min t) # *in-traverse-pairs* (snd (del-min t)) = *in-traverse-pairs*  
t  
⟨proof⟩

**fun** *delete-elt-tree* :: ('a, 'b) tree  $\Rightarrow$  ('a, 'b) tree **where**  
*delete-elt-tree* Tip = undefined  
| *delete-elt-tree* (Node lt x v rt) =  
    (if lt = Tip then rt else if rt = Tip then lt else  
    Node lt (fst (fst (del-min rt))) (snd (fst (del-min rt))) (snd (del-min rt)))  
⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *delete-elt-in-traverse-pairs* [rewrite]:  
*in-traverse-pairs* (delete-elt-tree (Node lt x v rt)) = *in-traverse-pairs* lt @ *in-traverse-pairs*  
rt ⟨proof⟩

**fun** *tree-delete* :: 'a::ord  $\Rightarrow$  ('a, 'b) tree  $\Rightarrow$  ('a, 'b) tree **where**  
*tree-delete* x Tip = Tip  
| *tree-delete* x (Node l y w r) =



```

    (if x = y then delete-elt-tree (Node l y w r)
     else if x < y then Node (tree-delete x l) y w r
     else Node l y w (tree-delete x r))
⟨ML⟩

```

**lemma** *tree-delete-in-traverse-pairs* [rewrite]:  
*tree-sorted t*  $\implies$  *in-traverse-pairs (tree-delete x t) = remove-elt-pairs x (in-traverse-pairs t)*  
⟨proof⟩

Correctness results for deletion.

**theorem** *tree-delete-sorted* [forward]:  
*tree-sorted t*  $\implies$  *tree-sorted (tree-delete x t)* ⟨proof⟩

**theorem** *tree-delete-map* [rewrite]:  
*tree-sorted t*  $\implies$  *tree-map (tree-delete x t) = delete-map x (tree-map t)* ⟨proof⟩

## 4.7 Search on sorted trees

```

fun tree-search :: ('a::ord, 'b) tree  $\Rightarrow$  'a  $\Rightarrow$  'b option where
  tree-search Tip x = None
| tree-search (Node l k v r) x =
  (if x = k then Some v
   else if x < k then tree-search l x
   else tree-search r x)
⟨ML⟩

```

Correctness of search.

**theorem** *tree-search-correct* [rewrite]:  
*tree-sorted t*  $\implies$  *tree-search t x = (tree-map t)⟨x⟩*  
⟨proof⟩

**end**

## 5 Partial equivalence relation

```

theory Partial-Equiv-Rel
  imports Auto2-HOL.Auto2-Main
begin

```

Partial equivalence relations, following theory Lib/Partial\_Equivalence\_Relation in [3].

**definition** *part-equiv* :: ('a  $\times$  'a) set  $\Rightarrow$  bool **where** [rewrite]:  
*part-equiv R*  $\longleftrightarrow$  *sym R*  $\wedge$  *trans R*

**lemma** *part-equivI* [forward]: *sym R*  $\implies$  *trans R*  $\implies$  *part-equiv R* ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *part-equivD1* [forward]: *part-equiv R*  $\implies$  *sym R* ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *part-equivD2* [forward]: *part-equiv R*  $\implies$  *trans R* ⟨proof⟩

⟨ML⟩

## 5.1 Combining two elements in a partial equivalence relation

**definition** *per-union* :: ('a × 'a) set ⇒ 'a ⇒ 'a ⇒ ('a × 'a) set **where** [*rewrite*]:  
$$\text{per-union } R \ a \ b = R \cup \{ (x,y). (x,a) \in R \wedge (b,y) \in R \} \cup \{ (x,y). (x,b) \in R \wedge (a,y) \in R \}$$

**lemma** *per-union-memI1* [*backward*]:

$(x, y) \in R \implies (x, y) \in \text{per-union } R \ a \ b$  *<proof>*  
*<ML>*

**lemma** *per-union-memI2* [*backward*]:

$(x, a) \in R \implies (b, y) \in R \implies (x, y) \in \text{per-union } R \ a \ b$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *per-union-memI3* [*backward*]:

$(x, b) \in R \implies (a, y) \in R \implies (x, y) \in \text{per-union } R \ a \ b$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *per-union-memD*:

$(x, y) \in \text{per-union } R \ a \ b \implies (x, y) \in R \vee ((x, a) \in R \wedge (b, y) \in R) \vee ((x, b) \in R \wedge (a, y) \in R)$   
*<proof>*  
*<ML>*

**lemma** *per-union-is-trans* [*forward*]:

$\text{trans } R \implies \text{trans } (\text{per-union } R \ a \ b)$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *per-union-is-part-equiv* [*forward*]:

$\text{part-equiv } R \implies \text{part-equiv } (\text{per-union } R \ a \ b)$  *<proof>*

**end**

## 6 Union find

**theory** *Union-Find*

**imports** *Partial-Equiv-Rel*

**begin**

Development follows theory *Union\_Find* in [5].

### 6.1 Representing a partial equivalence relation using rep\_of array

**function** (*domintros*) *rep-of* **where**

$\text{rep-of } l \ i = (\text{if } l \ ! \ i = i \ \text{then } i \ \text{else } \text{rep-of } l \ (l \ ! \ i))$  *<proof>*

*<ML>*

**definition** *ufa-invar* :: nat list ⇒ bool **where** [*rewrite*]:

$\text{ufa-invar } l = (\forall i < \text{length } l. \text{rep-of-dom } (l, i) \wedge l \ ! \ i < \text{length } l)$

**lemma** *ufa-invarD*:

$ufa\text{-invar } l \implies i < \text{length } l \implies \text{rep-of-dom } (l, i) \wedge l ! i < \text{length } l$  *<proof>*  
*<ML>*

**lemma** *rep-of-id* [*rewrite*]:  $ufa\text{-invar } l \implies i < \text{length } l \implies l ! i = i \implies \text{rep-of } l i = i$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *rep-of-iff* [*rewrite*]:

$ufa\text{-invar } l \implies i < \text{length } l \implies \text{rep-of } l i = (\text{if } l ! i = i \text{ then } i \text{ else } \text{rep-of } l (l ! i))$  *<proof>*  
*<ML>*

**lemma** *rep-of-min* [*rewrite*]:

$ufa\text{-invar } l \implies i < \text{length } l \implies l ! (\text{rep-of } l i) = \text{rep-of } l i$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *rep-of-induct*:

$ufa\text{-invar } l \wedge i < \text{length } l \implies$   
 $\forall i < \text{length } l. l ! i = i \longrightarrow P l i \implies$   
 $\forall i < \text{length } l. l ! i \neq i \longrightarrow P l (l ! i) \longrightarrow P l i \implies P l i$   
*<proof>*  
*<ML>*

**lemma** *rep-of-bound* [*forward-arg1*]:

$ufa\text{-invar } l \implies i < \text{length } l \implies \text{rep-of } l i < \text{length } l$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *rep-of-idem* [*rewrite*]:

$ufa\text{-invar } l \implies i < \text{length } l \implies \text{rep-of } l (\text{rep-of } l i) = \text{rep-of } l i$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *rep-of-idx* [*rewrite*]:

$ufa\text{-invar } l \implies i < \text{length } l \implies \text{rep-of } l (l ! i) = \text{rep-of } l i$  *<proof>*

**definition** *ufa-α* :: *nat list*  $\Rightarrow$  (*nat*  $\times$  *nat*) *set* **where** [*rewrite*]:

$ufa\text{-}\alpha \ l = \{(x, y). x < \text{length } l \wedge y < \text{length } l \wedge \text{rep-of } l x = \text{rep-of } l y\}$

**lemma** *ufa-α-memI* [*backward, forward-arg*]:

$x < \text{length } l \implies y < \text{length } l \implies \text{rep-of } l x = \text{rep-of } l y \implies (x, y) \in ufa\text{-}\alpha \ l$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *ufa-α-memD* [*forward*]:

$(x, y) \in ufa\text{-}\alpha \ l \implies x < \text{length } l \wedge y < \text{length } l \wedge \text{rep-of } l x = \text{rep-of } l y$  *<proof>*  
*<ML>*

**lemma** *ufa-α-equiv* [*forward*]: *part-equiv* (*ufa-α* *l*) *<proof>*

**lemma** *ufa-α-refl* [*rewrite*]:  $(i, i) \in ufa\text{-}\alpha \ l \longleftrightarrow i < \text{length } l$  *<proof>*

## 6.2 Operations on rep\_of array

**definition** *uf-init-rel* :: *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  (*nat*  $\times$  *nat*) *set* **where** [*rewrite*]:  
*uf-init-rel* *n* = *ufa- $\alpha$*  [*0..<n*]

**lemma** *ufa-init-invar* [*resolve*]: *ufa-invar* [*0..<n*]  $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**lemma** *ufa-init-correct* [*rewrite*]:  
 $(x, y) \in \text{uf-init-rel } n \iff (x = y \wedge x < n)$   
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**abbreviation** *ufa-union* :: *nat list*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat list* **where**  
*ufa-union* *l x y*  $\equiv$  *l*[*rep-of l x := rep-of l y*]

**lemma** *ufa-union-invar* [*forward-arg*]:  
*ufa-invar l*  $\implies$   $x < \text{length } l \implies y < \text{length } l \implies l' = \text{ufa-union } l \ x \ y \implies$   
*ufa-invar l'*  
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**lemma** *ufa-union-aux* [*rewrite*]:  
*ufa-invar l*  $\implies$   $x < \text{length } l \implies y < \text{length } l \implies l' = \text{ufa-union } l \ x \ y \implies$   
 $i < \text{length } l' \implies \text{rep-of } l' \ i = (\text{if } \text{rep-of } l \ i = \text{rep-of } l \ x \ \text{then } \text{rep-of } l \ y \ \text{else } \text{rep-of } l \ i)$   
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

Correctness of union operation.

**theorem** *ufa-union-correct* [*rewrite*]:  
*ufa-invar l*  $\implies$   $x < \text{length } l \implies y < \text{length } l \implies l' = \text{ufa-union } l \ x \ y \implies$   
*ufa- $\alpha$*  *l'* = *per-union* (*ufa- $\alpha$*  *l*) *x y*  
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**abbreviation** *ufa-compress* :: *nat list*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat list* **where**  
*ufa-compress l x*  $\equiv$  *l*[*x := rep-of l x*]

**lemma** *ufa-compress-invar* [*forward-arg*]:  
*ufa-invar l*  $\implies$   $x < \text{length } l \implies l' = \text{ufa-compress } l \ x \implies \text{ufa-invar } l'$   
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**lemma** *ufa-compress-aux* [*rewrite*]:  
*ufa-invar l*  $\implies$   $x < \text{length } l \implies l' = \text{ufa-compress } l \ x \implies i < \text{length } l' \implies$   
 $\text{rep-of } l' \ i = \text{rep-of } l \ i$   
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

Correctness of compress operation.

**theorem** *ufa-compress-correct* [*rewrite*]:  
*ufa-invar l*  $\implies$   $x < \text{length } l \implies \text{ufa-}\alpha$  (*ufa-compress l x*) = *ufa- $\alpha$*  *l*  $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

$\langle$ *ML* $\rangle$

**end**

## 7 Connectedness for a set of undirected edges.

```

theory Connectivity
  imports Union-Find
begin

```

A simple application of union-find for graph connectivity.

```

fun is-path :: nat  $\Rightarrow$  (nat  $\times$  nat) set  $\Rightarrow$  nat list  $\Rightarrow$  bool where
  is-path n S [] = False
| is-path n S (x # xs) =
  (if xs = [] then x < n else ((x, hd xs)  $\in$  S  $\vee$  (hd xs, x)  $\in$  S)  $\wedge$  is-path n S xs)
<ML>

```

```

definition has-path :: nat  $\Rightarrow$  (nat  $\times$  nat) set  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  bool where [rewrite]:
  has-path n S i j  $\longleftrightarrow$  ( $\exists p. is-path n S p \wedge hd p = i \wedge last p = j$ )

```

```

lemma is-path-nonempty [forward]: is-path n S p  $\Longrightarrow$  p  $\neq$  [] <proof>

```

```

lemma nonempty-is-not-path [resolve]:  $\neg is-path n S []$  <proof>

```

```

lemma is-path-extend [forward]:
  is-path n S p  $\Longrightarrow$  S  $\subseteq$  T  $\Longrightarrow$  is-path n T p
<proof>

```

```

lemma has-path-extend [forward]:
  has-path n S i j  $\Longrightarrow$  S  $\subseteq$  T  $\Longrightarrow$  has-path n T i j <proof>

```

```

definition joinable :: nat list  $\Rightarrow$  nat list  $\Rightarrow$  bool where [rewrite]:
  joinable p q  $\longleftrightarrow$  (last p = hd q)

```

```

definition path-join :: nat list  $\Rightarrow$  nat list  $\Rightarrow$  nat list where [rewrite]:
  path-join p q = p @ tl q
<ML>

```

```

lemma path-join-hd [rewrite]: p  $\neq$  []  $\Longrightarrow$  hd (path-join p q) = hd p <proof>

```

```

lemma path-join-last [rewrite]: joinable p q  $\Longrightarrow$  q  $\neq$  []  $\Longrightarrow$  last (path-join p q) =
  last q
<proof>

```

```

lemma path-join-is-path [backward]:
  joinable p q  $\Longrightarrow$  is-path n S p  $\Longrightarrow$  is-path n S q  $\Longrightarrow$  is-path n S (path-join p q)
<proof>

```

```

lemma has-path-trans [forward]:
  has-path n S i j  $\Longrightarrow$  has-path n S j k  $\Longrightarrow$  has-path n S i k
<proof>

```

```

definition is-valid-graph :: nat  $\Rightarrow$  (nat  $\times$  nat) set  $\Rightarrow$  bool where [rewrite]:
  is-valid-graph n S  $\longleftrightarrow$  ( $\forall p \in S. fst p < n \wedge snd p < n$ )

```

**lemma** *has-path-single1* [*backward1*]:  
 $is-valid-graph\ n\ S \implies (a, b) \in S \implies has-path\ n\ S\ a\ b$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *has-path-single2* [*backward1*]:  
 $is-valid-graph\ n\ S \implies (a, b) \in S \implies has-path\ n\ S\ b\ a$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *has-path-refl* [*backward2*]:  
 $is-valid-graph\ n\ S \implies a < n \implies has-path\ n\ S\ a\ a$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**definition** *connected-rel* ::  $nat \Rightarrow (nat \times nat)\ set \Rightarrow (nat \times nat)\ set$  **where**  
 $connected-rel\ n\ S = \{(a,b). has-path\ n\ S\ a\ b\}$

**lemma** *connected-rel-iff* [*rewrite*]:  
 $(a, b) \in connected-rel\ n\ S \longleftrightarrow has-path\ n\ S\ a\ b$  ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *connected-rel-trans* [*forward*]:  
 $trans\ (connected-rel\ n\ S)$  ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *connected-rel-refl* [*backward2*]:  
 $is-valid-graph\ n\ S \implies a < n \implies (a, a) \in connected-rel\ n\ S$  ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *is-path-per-union* [*rewrite*]:  
 $is-valid-graph\ n\ (S \cup \{(a, b)\}) \implies$   
 $has-path\ n\ (S \cup \{(a, b)\})\ i\ j \longleftrightarrow (i, j) \in per-union\ (connected-rel\ n\ S)\ a\ b$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *connected-rel-union* [*rewrite*]:  
 $is-valid-graph\ n\ (S \cup \{(a, b)\}) \implies$   
 $connected-rel\ n\ (S \cup \{(a, b)\}) = per-union\ (connected-rel\ n\ S)\ a\ b$  ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *connected-rel-init* [*rewrite*]:  
 $connected-rel\ n\ \{\} = uf-init-rel\ n$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**fun** *connected-rel-ind* ::  $nat \Rightarrow (nat \times nat)\ list \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow (nat \times nat)\ set$  **where**  
 $connected-rel-ind\ n\ es\ 0 = uf-init-rel\ n$   
 $| connected-rel-ind\ n\ es\ (Suc\ k) =$   
 $(let\ R = connected-rel-ind\ n\ es\ k; p = es\ !\ k\ in$   
 $per-union\ R\ (fst\ p)\ (snd\ p))$   
 ⟨*ML*⟩

**lemma** *connected-rel-ind-rule* [*rewrite*]:  
 $is-valid-graph\ n\ (set\ es) \implies k \leq length\ es \implies$   
 $connected-rel-ind\ n\ es\ k = connected-rel\ n\ (set\ (take\ k\ es))$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

Correctness of the functional algorithm.

**theorem** *connected-rel-ind-compute* [rewrite]:

*is-valid-graph*  $n$  (set *es*)  $\implies$   
*connected-rel-ind*  $n$  *es* (*length es*) = *connected-rel*  $n$  (set *es*)  $\langle$ proof $\rangle$

**end**

## 8 Arrays

**theory** *Arrays-Ex*

**imports** *Auto2-HOL.Auto2-Main*

**begin**

Basic examples for arrays.

### 8.1 List swap

**definition** *list-swap* :: 'a list  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  'a list **where** [rewrite]:

*list-swap*  $xs$   $i$   $j$  =  $xs[i := xs ! j, j := xs ! i]$   
 $\langle$ ML $\rangle$

**lemma** *list-swap-eval*:

$i < \text{length } xs \implies j < \text{length } xs \implies$   
 $(\text{list-swap } xs \ i \ j) ! k = (\text{if } k = i \ \text{then } xs ! j \ \text{else if } k = j \ \text{then } xs ! i \ \text{else } xs ! k)$   
 $\langle$ proof $\rangle$   
 $\langle$ ML $\rangle$

**lemma** *list-swap-eval-triv* [rewrite]:

$i < \text{length } xs \implies j < \text{length } xs \implies (\text{list-swap } xs \ i \ j) ! i = xs ! j$   
 $i < \text{length } xs \implies j < \text{length } xs \implies (\text{list-swap } xs \ i \ j) ! j = xs ! i$   $\langle$ proof $\rangle$

**lemma** *length-list-swap* [rewrite-arg]:

*length* (*list-swap*  $xs$   $i$   $j$ ) = *length*  $xs$   $\langle$ proof $\rangle$

**lemma** *mset-list-swap* [rewrite]:

$i < \text{length } xs \implies j < \text{length } xs \implies \text{mset } (\text{list-swap } xs \ i \ j) = \text{mset } xs$   $\langle$ proof $\rangle$

**lemma** *set-list-swap* [rewrite]:

$i < \text{length } xs \implies j < \text{length } xs \implies \text{set } (\text{list-swap } xs \ i \ j) = \text{set } xs$   $\langle$ proof $\rangle$   
 $\langle$ ML $\rangle$

### 8.2 Reverse

**lemma** *rev-nth* [rewrite]:

$n < \text{length } xs \implies \text{rev } xs ! n = xs ! (\text{length } xs - 1 - n)$   
 $\langle$ proof $\rangle$

**fun** *rev-swap* :: 'a list  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  'a list **where**

$rev\text{-}swap\ xs\ i\ j = (if\ i < j\ then\ rev\text{-}swap\ (list\text{-}swap\ xs\ i\ j)\ (i + 1)\ (j - 1)\ else\ xs)$   
 ⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *rev-swap-length* [rewrite-arg]:  
 $j < length\ xs \implies length\ (rev\text{-}swap\ xs\ i\ j) = length\ xs$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *rev-swap-eval* [rewrite]:  
 $j < length\ xs \implies (rev\text{-}swap\ xs\ i\ j)\ !\ k =$   
 $(if\ k < i\ then\ xs\ !\ k\ else\ if\ k > j\ then\ xs\ !\ k\ else\ xs\ !\ (j - (k - i)))$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *rev-swap-is-rev* [rewrite]:  
 $length\ xs \geq 1 \implies rev\text{-}swap\ xs\ 0\ (length\ xs - 1) = rev\ xs$  ⟨proof⟩

### 8.3 Copy one array to the beginning of another

**fun** *array-copy* :: 'a list  $\Rightarrow$  'a list  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  'a list **where**  
 $array\text{-}copy\ xs\ xs'\ 0 = xs'$   
 $| array\text{-}copy\ xs\ xs'\ (Suc\ n) = list\text{-}update\ (array\text{-}copy\ xs\ xs'\ n)\ n\ (xs\ !\ n)$   
 ⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *array-copy-length* [rewrite-arg]:  
 $n \leq length\ xs \implies n \leq length\ xs' \implies length\ (array\text{-}copy\ xs\ xs'\ n) = length\ xs'$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *array-copy-ind* [rewrite]:  
 $n \leq length\ xs \implies n \leq length\ xs' \implies k < n \implies (array\text{-}copy\ xs\ xs'\ n)\ !\ k = xs\ !\ k$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *array-copy-correct* [rewrite]:  
 $n \leq length\ xs \implies n \leq length\ xs' \implies take\ n\ (array\text{-}copy\ xs\ xs'\ n) = take\ n\ xs$   
 ⟨proof⟩

### 8.4 Sublist

**definition** *sublist* :: nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  'a list  $\Rightarrow$  'a list **where** [rewrite]:  
 $sublist\ l\ r\ xs = drop\ l\ (take\ r\ xs)$   
 ⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *length-sublist* [rewrite-arg]:  
 $r \leq length\ xs \implies length\ (sublist\ l\ r\ xs) = r - l$  ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *nth-sublist* [rewrite]:  
 $r \leq length\ xs \implies xs' = sublist\ l\ r\ xs \implies i < length\ xs' \implies xs'\ !\ i = xs\ !\ (i + l)$  ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *sublist-nil* [rewrite]:



$r \leq \text{length } xs \implies r \leq l \implies \text{sublist } l \ r \ xs = []$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *sublist-0* [rewrite]:  
 $\text{sublist } 0 \ l \ xs = \text{take } l \ xs$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *sublist-drop* [rewrite]:  
 $\text{sublist } l \ r \ (\text{drop } n \ xs) = \text{sublist } (l + n) \ (r + n) \ xs$  *<proof>*

*<ML>*

**lemma** *sublist-single* [rewrite]:  
 $l + 1 \leq \text{length } xs \implies \text{sublist } l \ (l + 1) \ xs = [xs ! l]$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *sublist-append* [rewrite]:  
 $l \leq m \implies m \leq r \implies r \leq \text{length } xs \implies \text{sublist } l \ m \ xs @ \text{sublist } m \ r \ xs = \text{sublist } l \ r \ xs$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *sublist-Cons* [rewrite]:  
 $r \leq \text{length } xs \implies l < r \implies xs ! l \# \text{sublist } (l + 1) \ r \ xs = \text{sublist } l \ r \ xs$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *sublist-equalityI*:  
 $i \leq j \implies j \leq \text{length } xs \implies \text{length } xs = \text{length } ys \implies$   
 $\forall k. i \leq k \implies k < j \implies xs ! k = ys ! k \implies \text{sublist } i \ j \ xs = \text{sublist } i \ j \ ys$  *<proof>*  
*<ML>*

**lemma** *set-sublist* [resolve]:  
 $j \leq \text{length } xs \implies x \in \text{set } (\text{sublist } i \ j \ xs) \implies \exists k. k \geq i \wedge k < j \wedge x = xs ! k$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *list-take-sublist-drop-eq* [rewrite]:  
 $l \leq r \implies r \leq \text{length } xs \implies \text{take } l \ xs @ \text{sublist } l \ r \ xs @ \text{drop } r \ xs = xs$   
*<proof>*

## 8.5 Updating a set of elements in an array

**definition** *list-update-set* ::  $(\text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{bool}) \Rightarrow (\text{nat} \Rightarrow 'a) \Rightarrow 'a \text{ list} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ list}$  **where**  
[rewrite]:

$\text{list-update-set } S \ f \ xs = \text{list } (\lambda i. \text{if } S \ i \ \text{then } f \ i \ \text{else } xs ! i) \ (\text{length } xs)$

**lemma** *list-update-set-length* [rewrite-arg]:  
 $\text{length } (\text{list-update-set } S \ f \ xs) = \text{length } xs$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *list-update-set-nth* [rewrite]:  
 $xs' = \text{list-update-set } S \ f \ xs \implies i < \text{length } xs' \implies xs' ! i = (\text{if } S \ i \ \text{then } f \ i \ \text{else } xs ! i)$  *<proof>*  
*<ML>*

```

fun list-update-set-impl :: (nat  $\Rightarrow$  bool)  $\Rightarrow$  (nat  $\Rightarrow$  'a)  $\Rightarrow$  'a list  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  'a list
where
  list-update-set-impl S f xs 0 = xs
| list-update-set-impl S f xs (Suc k) =
  (let xs' = list-update-set-impl S f xs k in
   if S k then xs' [k := f k] else xs')
⟨ML⟩

lemma list-update-set-impl-ind [rewrite]:
  n  $\leq$  length xs  $\Longrightarrow$  list-update-set-impl S f xs n =
  list ( $\lambda i$ . if i < n then if S i then f i else xs ! i else xs ! i) (length xs)
⟨proof⟩

lemma list-update-set-impl-correct [rewrite]:
  list-update-set-impl S f xs (length xs) = list-update-set S f xs ⟨proof⟩

end

```

## 9 Dijkstra's algorithm for shortest paths

```

theory Dijkstra
  imports Mapping-Str Arrays-Ex
begin

```

Verification of Dijkstra's algorithm: function part.

The algorithm is also verified by Nordhoff and Lammich in [8].

### 9.1 Graphs

```

datatype graph = Graph nat list list

```

```

fun size :: graph  $\Rightarrow$  nat where
  size (Graph G) = length G

```

```

fun weight :: graph  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat where
  weight (Graph G) m n = (G ! m) ! n

```

```

fun valid-graph :: graph  $\Rightarrow$  bool where
  valid-graph (Graph G)  $\longleftrightarrow$  ( $\forall i < \text{length } G$ . length (G ! i) = length G)
⟨ML⟩

```

### 9.2 Paths on graphs

The set of vertices less than n.

```

definition verts :: graph  $\Rightarrow$  nat set where
  verts G = {i. i < size G}

```

**lemma** *verts-mem* [rewrite]:  $i \in \text{verts } G \longleftrightarrow i < \text{size } G$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *card-verts* [rewrite]:  $\text{card } (\text{verts } G) = \text{size } G$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *finite-verts* [forward]:  $\text{finite } (\text{verts } G)$  *<proof>*

**definition** *is-path* ::  $\text{graph} \Rightarrow \text{nat list} \Rightarrow \text{bool}$  **where** [rewrite]:

$\text{is-path } G \ p \longleftrightarrow p \neq [] \wedge \text{set } p \subseteq \text{verts } G$

**lemma** *is-path-to-in-verts* [forward]:  $\text{is-path } G \ p \Longrightarrow \text{hd } p \in \text{verts } G \wedge \text{last } p \in \text{verts } G$

*<proof>*

**definition** *joinable* ::  $\text{graph} \Rightarrow \text{nat list} \Rightarrow \text{nat list} \Rightarrow \text{bool}$  **where** [rewrite]:

$\text{joinable } G \ p \ q \longleftrightarrow (\text{is-path } G \ p \wedge \text{is-path } G \ q \wedge \text{last } p = \text{hd } q)$

**definition** *path-join* ::  $\text{graph} \Rightarrow \text{nat list} \Rightarrow \text{nat list} \Rightarrow \text{nat list}$  **where** [rewrite]:

$\text{path-join } G \ p \ q = p @ \text{tl } q$

*<ML>*

**lemma** *path-join-is-path*:

$\text{joinable } G \ p \ q \Longrightarrow \text{is-path } G \ (\text{path-join } G \ p \ q)$

*<proof>*

*<ML>*

**fun** *path-weight* ::  $\text{graph} \Rightarrow \text{nat list} \Rightarrow \text{nat}$  **where**

$\text{path-weight } G \ [] = 0$

|  $\text{path-weight } G \ (x \# xs) = (\text{if } xs = [] \text{ then } 0 \text{ else } \text{weight } G \ x \ (\text{hd } xs) + \text{path-weight } G \ xs)$

*<ML>*

**lemma** *path-weight-singleton* [rewrite]:  $\text{path-weight } G \ [x] = 0$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *path-weight-doubleton* [rewrite]:  $\text{path-weight } G \ [m, n] = \text{weight } G \ m \ n$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *path-weight-sum* [rewrite]:

$\text{joinable } G \ p \ q \Longrightarrow \text{path-weight } G \ (\text{path-join } G \ p \ q) = \text{path-weight } G \ p + \text{path-weight } G \ q$

*<proof>*

**fun** *path-set* ::  $\text{graph} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{nat list set}$  **where**

$\text{path-set } G \ m \ n = \{p. \text{is-path } G \ p \wedge \text{hd } p = m \wedge \text{last } p = n\}$

**lemma** *path-set-mem* [rewrite]:

$p \in \text{path-set } G \ m \ n \longleftrightarrow \text{is-path } G \ p \wedge \text{hd } p = m \wedge \text{last } p = n$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *path-join-set*:  $\text{joinable } G \ p \ q \Longrightarrow \text{path-join } G \ p \ q \in \text{path-set } G \ (\text{hd } p) \ (\text{last } q)$

*<proof>*

*<ML>*

### 9.3 Shortest paths

**definition** *is-shortest-path* :: *graph*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat list*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* **where** [rewrite]:

*is-shortest-path* *G m n p*  $\longleftrightarrow$   
 $(p \in \text{path-set } G \ m \ n \wedge (\forall p' \in \text{path-set } G \ m \ n. \text{path-weight } G \ p' \geq \text{path-weight } G \ p))$

**lemma** *is-shortest-pathD1* [forward]:

*is-shortest-path* *G m n p*  $\Longrightarrow p \in \text{path-set } G \ m \ n$   $\langle$ proof $\rangle$

**lemma** *is-shortest-pathD2* [forward]:

*is-shortest-path* *G m n p*  $\Longrightarrow p' \in \text{path-set } G \ m \ n \Longrightarrow \text{path-weight } G \ p' \geq \text{path-weight } G \ p$   $\langle$ proof $\rangle$   
 $\langle$ ML $\rangle$

**definition** *has-dist* :: *graph*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* **where** [rewrite]:

*has-dist* *G m n*  $\longleftrightarrow (\exists p. \text{is-shortest-path } G \ m \ n \ p)$

**lemma** *has-distI* [forward]: *is-shortest-path* *G m n p*  $\Longrightarrow \text{has-dist } G \ m \ n$   $\langle$ proof $\rangle$

**lemma** *has-distD* [resolve]: *has-dist* *G m n*  $\Longrightarrow \exists p. \text{is-shortest-path } G \ m \ n \ p$   $\langle$ proof $\rangle$

**lemma** *has-dist-to-in-verts* [forward]: *has-dist* *G u v*  $\Longrightarrow u \in \text{verts } G \wedge v \in \text{verts } G$   $\langle$ proof $\rangle$

$\langle$ ML $\rangle$

**definition** *dist* :: *graph*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat* **where** [rewrite]:

*dist* *G m n* = *path-weight* *G* (*SOME* *p. is-shortest-path* *G m n p*)  
 $\langle$ ML $\rangle$

**lemma** *dist-eq* [rewrite]:

*is-shortest-path* *G m n p*  $\Longrightarrow \text{dist } G \ m \ n = \text{path-weight } G \ p$   $\langle$ proof $\rangle$

**lemma** *distD* [forward]:

*has-dist* *G m n*  $\Longrightarrow p \in \text{path-set } G \ m \ n \Longrightarrow \text{path-weight } G \ p \geq \text{dist } G \ m \ n$   $\langle$ proof $\rangle$   
 $\langle$ ML $\rangle$

**lemma** *shortest-init* [resolve]:  $n \in \text{verts } G \Longrightarrow \text{is-shortest-path } G \ n \ n \ [n]$   $\langle$ proof $\rangle$

### 9.4 Interior points

List of interior points

**definition** *int-pts* :: *nat list*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat set* **where** [rewrite]:

*int-pts* *p* = *set* (*butlast* *p*)

**lemma** *int-pts-singleton* [rewrite]: *int-pts* [*x*] = {*x*}  $\langle$ proof $\rangle$

**lemma** *int-pts-doubleton* [rewrite]: *int-pts* [*x, y*] = {*x*}  $\langle$ proof $\rangle$

**definition** *path-set-on* :: *graph*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat set*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat list set* **where**

$path\text{-}set\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V = \{p. p \in path\text{-}set\ G\ m\ n \wedge int\text{-}pts\ p \subseteq V\}$

**lemma** *path-set-on-mem* [rewrite]:

$p \in path\text{-}set\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V \longleftrightarrow p \in path\text{-}set\ G\ m\ n \wedge int\text{-}pts\ p \subseteq V$   $\langle proof \rangle$

Version of shortest path on a set of points

**definition** *is-shortest-path-on* ::  $graph \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat\ list \Rightarrow nat\ set \Rightarrow bool$

**where** [rewrite]:

$is\text{-}shortest\text{-}path\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ p\ V \longleftrightarrow$

$(p \in path\text{-}set\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V \wedge (\forall p' \in path\text{-}set\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V. path\text{-}weight\ G\ p' \geq path\text{-}weight\ G\ p))$

**lemma** *is-shortest-path-onD1* [forward]:

$is\text{-}shortest\text{-}path\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ p\ V \Longrightarrow p \in path\text{-}set\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *is-shortest-path-onD2* [forward]:

$is\text{-}shortest\text{-}path\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ p\ V \Longrightarrow p' \in path\text{-}set\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V \Longrightarrow path\text{-}weight\ G\ p' \geq path\text{-}weight\ G\ p$   $\langle proof \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

**definition** *has-dist-on* ::  $graph \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat\ set \Rightarrow bool$  **where** [rewrite]:

$has\text{-}dist\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V \longleftrightarrow (\exists p. is\text{-}shortest\text{-}path\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ p\ V)$

**lemma** *has-dist-onI* [forward]:  $is\text{-}shortest\text{-}path\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ p\ V \Longrightarrow has\text{-}dist\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *has-dist-onD* [resolve]:  $has\text{-}dist\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V \Longrightarrow \exists p. is\text{-}shortest\text{-}path\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ p\ V$   $\langle proof \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

**definition** *dist-on* ::  $graph \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat\ set \Rightarrow nat$  **where** [rewrite]:

$dist\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V = path\text{-}weight\ G\ (SOME\ p. is\text{-}shortest\text{-}path\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ p\ V)$

$\langle ML \rangle$

**lemma** *dist-on-eq* [rewrite]:

$is\text{-}shortest\text{-}path\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ p\ V \Longrightarrow dist\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V = path\text{-}weight\ G\ p$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *dist-onD* [forward]:

$has\text{-}dist\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V \Longrightarrow p \in path\text{-}set\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V \Longrightarrow path\text{-}weight\ G\ p \geq dist\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V$   $\langle proof \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

## 9.5 Two splitting lemmas

**lemma** *path-split1* [backward]:  $is\text{-}path\ G\ p \Longrightarrow hd\ p \in V \Longrightarrow last\ p \notin V \Longrightarrow$

$\exists p1\ p2. joinable\ G\ p1\ p2 \wedge p = path\text{-}join\ G\ p1\ p2 \wedge int\text{-}pts\ p1 \subseteq V \wedge hd\ p2 \notin V$

$\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *path-split2* [backward]:  $is\text{-}path\ G\ p \Longrightarrow hd\ p \neq last\ p \Longrightarrow$

$\exists q n. \text{joinable } G q [n, \text{last } p] \wedge p = \text{path-join } G q [n, \text{last } p]$   
 ⟨proof⟩

## 9.6 Deriving `has__dist` and `has__dist__on`

**definition** `known-dists` :: `graph`  $\Rightarrow$  `nat set`  $\Rightarrow$  `bool` **where** [`rewrite`]:  
 $\text{known-dists } G V \iff (V \subseteq \text{verts } G \wedge 0 \in V \wedge$   
 $(\forall i \in \text{verts } G. \text{has-dist-on } G 0 i V) \wedge$   
 $(\forall i \in V. \text{has-dist } G 0 i \wedge \text{dist } G 0 i = \text{dist-on } G 0 i V))$

**lemma** `derive-dist` [`backward2`]:  
 $\text{known-dists } G V \implies$   
 $m \in \text{verts } G - V \implies$   
 $\forall i \in \text{verts } G - V. \text{dist-on } G 0 i V \geq \text{dist-on } G 0 m V \implies$   
 $\text{has-dist } G 0 m \wedge \text{dist } G 0 m = \text{dist-on } G 0 m V$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** `join-def'` [`resolve`]:  $\text{joinable } G p q \implies \text{path-join } G p q = \text{butlast } p @ q$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** `int-pts-join` [`rewrite`]:  
 $\text{joinable } G p q \implies \text{int-pts } (\text{path-join } G p q) = \text{int-pts } p \cup \text{int-pts } q$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** `dist-on-triangle-ineq` [`backward`]:  
 $\text{has-dist-on } G k m V \implies \text{has-dist-on } G k n V \implies V \subseteq \text{verts } G \implies n \in \text{verts } G \implies m \in V \implies$   
 $\text{dist-on } G k m V + \text{weight } G m n \geq \text{dist-on } G k n V$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** `derive-dist-on` [`backward2`]:  
 $\text{known-dists } G V \implies$   
 $m \in \text{verts } G - V \implies$   
 $\forall i \in \text{verts } G - V. \text{dist-on } G 0 i V \geq \text{dist-on } G 0 m V \implies$   
 $V' = V \cup \{m\} \implies$   
 $n \in \text{verts } G - V' \implies$   
 $\text{has-dist-on } G 0 n V' \wedge \text{dist-on } G 0 n V' = \min (\text{dist-on } G 0 n V) (\text{dist-on } G 0 m V + \text{weight } G m n)$   
 ⟨proof⟩

## 9.7 Invariant for the Dijkstra's algorithm

The state consists of an array maintaining the best estimates, and a heap containing estimates for the unknown vertices.

**datatype** `state` = `State` (`est`: `nat list`) (`heap`: (`nat`, `nat`) `map`)  
 ⟨ML⟩

**definition** `unknown-set` :: `state`  $\Rightarrow$  `nat set` **where** [`rewrite`]:  
 $\text{unknown-set } S = \text{keys-of } (\text{heap } S)$

**definition** *known-set* :: *state*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat set* **where** [rewrite]:

$$\text{known-set } S = \{..<\text{length } (\text{est } S)\} - \text{unknown-set } S$$

Invariant: for every vertex, the estimate is at least the shortest distance.  
Furthermore, for the known vertices the estimate is exact.

**definition** *inv* :: *graph*  $\Rightarrow$  *state*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* **where** [rewrite]:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{inv } G \ S \longleftrightarrow & (\text{let } V = \text{known-set } S; W = \text{unknown-set } S; M = \text{heap } S \text{ in} \\ & (\text{length } (\text{est } S) = \text{size } G \wedge \text{known-dists } G \ V \wedge \\ & \text{keys-of } M \subseteq \text{verts } G \wedge \\ & (\forall i \in W. M(i) = \text{Some } (\text{est } S ! i)) \wedge \\ & (\forall i \in V. \text{est } S ! i = \text{dist } G \ 0 \ i) \wedge \\ & (\forall i \in \text{verts } G. \text{est } S ! i = \text{dist-on } G \ 0 \ i \ V))) \end{aligned}$$

**lemma** *invE1* [forward]:  $\text{inv } G \ S \Longrightarrow \text{length } (\text{est } S) = \text{size } G \wedge \text{known-dists } G$   
(*known-set* *S*)  $\wedge$  *unknown-set* *S*  $\subseteq$  *verts* *G* <proof>

**lemma** *invE2* [forward]:  $\text{inv } G \ S \Longrightarrow i \in \text{known-set } S \Longrightarrow \text{est } S ! i = \text{dist } G \ 0 \ i$   
<proof>

**lemma** *invE3* [forward]:  $\text{inv } G \ S \Longrightarrow i \in \text{verts } G \Longrightarrow \text{est } S ! i = \text{dist-on } G \ 0 \ i$   
(*known-set* *S*) <proof>

**lemma** *invE4* [rewrite]:  $\text{inv } G \ S \Longrightarrow i \in \text{unknown-set } S \Longrightarrow (\text{heap } S)(i) = \text{Some}$   
(*est* *S* ! *i*) <proof>  
<ML>

**lemma** *inv-unknown-set* [rewrite]:

$$\text{inv } G \ S \Longrightarrow \text{unknown-set } S = \text{verts } G - \text{known-set } S \text{ <proof>}$$

**lemma** *dijkstra-end-inv* [forward]:

$$\text{inv } G \ S \Longrightarrow \text{unknown-set } S = \{\} \Longrightarrow \forall i \in \text{verts } G. \text{has-dist } G \ 0 \ i \wedge \text{est } S ! i = \text{dist } G \ 0 \ i \text{ <proof>}$$

## 9.8 Starting state

**definition** *dijkstra-start-state* :: *graph*  $\Rightarrow$  *state* **where** [rewrite]:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{dijkstra-start-state } G = & \\ & \text{State } (\text{list } (\lambda i. \text{if } i = 0 \text{ then } 0 \text{ else } \text{weight } G \ 0 \ i) (\text{size } G)) \\ & (\text{map-constr } (\lambda i. i > 0) (\lambda i. \text{weight } G \ 0 \ i) (\text{size } G)) \end{aligned}$$

<ML>

**lemma** *dijkstra-start-known-set* [rewrite]:

$$\text{size } G > 0 \Longrightarrow \text{known-set } (\text{dijkstra-start-state } G) = \{0\} \text{ <proof>}$$

**lemma** *dijkstra-start-unknown-set* [rewrite]:

$$\text{size } G > 0 \Longrightarrow \text{unknown-set } (\text{dijkstra-start-state } G) = \text{verts } G - \{0\} \text{ <proof>}$$

**lemma** *card-start-state* [rewrite]:

$$\text{size } G > 0 \Longrightarrow \text{card } (\text{unknown-set } (\text{dijkstra-start-state } G)) = \text{size } G - 1 \text{ <proof>}$$

Starting start of Dijkstra's algorithm satisfies the invariant.

**theorem** *dijkstra-start-inv* [*backward*]:  
 $size\ G > 0 \implies inv\ G\ (dijkstra\text{-}start\text{-}state\ G)$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

## 9.9 Step of Dijkstra's algorithm

**fun** *dijkstra-step* :: *graph*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *state*  $\Rightarrow$  *state* **where**  
*dijkstra-step* *G m* (*State e M*) =  
 (let *M'* = *delete-map m M*;  
   *e'* = *list-update-set* ( $\lambda i. i \in keys\text{-}of\ M'$ ) ( $\lambda i. min\ (e\ !\ m + weight\ G\ m\ i)$   
 (*e ! i*)) *e*;  
   *M''* = *map-update-all* ( $\lambda i. e'\ !\ i$ ) *M'*  
 in *State e' M''*)  
 ⟨*ML*⟩

**lemma** *has-dist-on-larger* [*backward1*]:  
 $has\text{-}dist\ G\ m\ n \implies has\text{-}dist\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V \implies dist\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ V = dist\ G\ m\ n$   
 $\implies$   
 $has\text{-}dist\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ (V \cup \{x\}) \wedge dist\text{-}on\ G\ m\ n\ (V \cup \{x\}) = dist\ G\ m\ n$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *dijkstra-step-unknown-set* [*rewrite*]:  
 $inv\ G\ S \implies m \in unknown\text{-}set\ S \implies unknown\text{-}set\ (dijkstra\text{-}step\ G\ m\ S) =$   
 $unknown\text{-}set\ S - \{m\}$  ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *dijkstra-step-known-set* [*rewrite*]:  
 $inv\ G\ S \implies m \in unknown\text{-}set\ S \implies known\text{-}set\ (dijkstra\text{-}step\ G\ m\ S) = known\text{-}set$   
 $S \cup \{m\}$  ⟨*proof*⟩

One step of Dijkstra's algorithm preserves the invariant.

**theorem** *dijkstra-step-preserves-inv* [*backward*]:  
 $inv\ G\ S \implies is\text{-}heap\text{-}min\ m\ (heap\ S) \implies inv\ G\ (dijkstra\text{-}step\ G\ m\ S)$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**definition** *is-dijkstra-step* :: *graph*  $\Rightarrow$  *state*  $\Rightarrow$  *state*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* **where** [*rewrite*]:  
 $is\text{-}dijkstra\text{-}step\ G\ S\ S' \iff (\exists m. is\text{-}heap\text{-}min\ m\ (heap\ S) \wedge S' = dijkstra\text{-}step\ G\ m\ S)$

**lemma** *is-dijkstra-stepI* [*backward2*]:  
 $is\text{-}heap\text{-}min\ m\ (heap\ S) \implies dijkstra\text{-}step\ G\ m\ S = S' \implies is\text{-}dijkstra\text{-}step\ G\ S\ S'$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *is-dijkstra-stepD1* [*forward*]:  
 $inv\ G\ S \implies is\text{-}dijkstra\text{-}step\ G\ S\ S' \implies inv\ G\ S'$  ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *is-dijkstra-stepD2* [*forward*]:  
 $inv\ G\ S \implies is\text{-}dijkstra\text{-}step\ G\ S\ S' \implies card\ (unknown\text{-}set\ S') = card\ (unknown\text{-}set$   
 $S) - 1$  ⟨*proof*⟩  
 ⟨*ML*⟩



end

## 10 Intervals

**theory** *Interval*  
  **imports** *Auto2-HOL.Auto2-Main*  
**begin**

Basic definition of intervals.

### 10.1 Definition of interval

**datatype** *'a interval* = *Interval* (*low*: 'a) (*high*: 'a)  
(*ML*)

**instantiation** *interval* :: (*linorder*) *linorder* **begin**

**definition** *int-less*: ( $a < b$ ) = ( $low\ a < low\ b \mid (low\ a = low\ b \wedge high\ a < high\ b)$ )

**definition** *int-less-eq*: ( $a \leq b$ ) = ( $low\ a < low\ b \mid (low\ a = low\ b \wedge high\ a \leq high\ b)$ )

**instance** (*proof*) **end**

**definition** *is-interval* :: (*'a::linorder*) *interval*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* **where** [*rewrite*]:  
  *is-interval* *it*  $\longleftrightarrow$  ( $low\ it \leq high\ it$ )

### 10.2 Definition of interval with an index

**datatype** *'a idx-interval* = *IdxInterval* (*int*: 'a *interval*) (*idx*: *nat*)  
(*ML*)

**instantiation** *idx-interval* :: (*linorder*) *linorder* **begin**

**definition** *iint-less*: ( $a < b$ ) = ( $int\ a < int\ b \mid (int\ a = int\ b \wedge idx\ a < idx\ b)$ )

**definition** *iint-less-eq*: ( $a \leq b$ ) = ( $int\ a < int\ b \mid (int\ a = int\ b \wedge idx\ a \leq idx\ b)$ )

**instance** (*proof*) **end**

**lemma** *interval-less-to-le-low* [*forward*]:  
  ( $a::('a::linorder\ idx-interval)$ )  $< b \implies low\ (int\ a) \leq low\ (int\ b)$   
  (*proof*)

### 10.3 Overlapping intervals

**definition** *is-overlap* :: (*'a::linorder*) *interval*  $\Rightarrow$  'a *interval*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* **where** [*rewrite*]:  
  *is-overlap* *x y*  $\longleftrightarrow$  ( $high\ x \geq low\ y \wedge high\ y \geq low\ x$ )

**definition** *has-overlap* :: ('a::linorder) idx-interval set  $\Rightarrow$  'a interval  $\Rightarrow$  bool **where**  
 [rewrite]:

*has-overlap* xs y  $\longleftrightarrow$  ( $\exists x \in xs. is-overlap (int x) y$ )

**end**

## 11 Interval tree

**theory** *Interval-Tree*

**imports** *Lists-Ex Interval*

**begin**

Functional version of interval tree. This is an augmented data structure on top of regular binary search trees (see BST.thy). See [2, Section 14.3] for a reference.

### 11.1 Definition of an interval tree

**datatype** *interval-tree* =

*Tip*

| *Node* (*lsub*: *interval-tree*) (*val*: nat *idx-interval*) (*tmax*: nat) (*rsub*: *interval-tree*)

**where**

*tmax Tip* = 0

$\langle ML \rangle$

### 11.2 Inorder traversal, and set of elements of a tree

**fun** *in-traverse* :: *interval-tree*  $\Rightarrow$  nat *idx-interval list* **where**

*in-traverse Tip* = []

| *in-traverse* (*Node l it m r*) = *in-traverse l* @ *it* # *in-traverse r*

$\langle ML \rangle$

**fun** *tree-set* :: *interval-tree*  $\Rightarrow$  nat *idx-interval set* **where**

*tree-set Tip* = {}

| *tree-set* (*Node l it m r*) = {*it*}  $\cup$  *tree-set l*  $\cup$  *tree-set r*

$\langle ML \rangle$

**fun** *tree-sorted* :: *interval-tree*  $\Rightarrow$  bool **where**

*tree-sorted Tip* = True

| *tree-sorted* (*Node l it m r*) = (( $\forall x \in tree-set l. x < it$ )  $\wedge$  ( $\forall x \in tree-set r. it < x$ )  
 $\wedge tree-sorted l \wedge tree-sorted r$ )

$\langle ML \rangle$

**lemma** *tree-sorted-lr* [forward]:

*tree-sorted* (*Node l it m r*)  $\Longrightarrow$  *tree-sorted l*  $\wedge$  *tree-sorted r*  $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *tree-sortedD1* [forward]:

*tree-sorted* (*Node l it m r*)  $\Longrightarrow$   $x \in tree-set l \Longrightarrow x < it$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *tree-sortedD2* [forward]:  
 $tree\text{-}sorted\ (Node\ l\ it\ m\ r) \implies x \in tree\text{-}set\ r \implies x > it$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *inorder-preserve-set* [rewrite]:  
 $tree\text{-}set\ t = set\ (in\text{-}traverse\ t)$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *inorder-sorted* [rewrite]:  
 $tree\text{-}sorted\ t \iff strict\text{-}sorted\ (in\text{-}traverse\ t)$   
*<proof>*

Use definition in terms of `in_traverse` from now on.

*<ML>*

### 11.3 Invariant on the maximum

**definition** *max3* ::  $nat\ idx\text{-}interval \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow nat$  **where** [rewrite]:  
 $max3\ it\ b\ c = max\ (high\ (int\ it))\ (max\ b\ c)$

**fun** *tree-max-inv* ::  $interval\text{-}tree \Rightarrow bool$  **where**  
 $tree\text{-}max\text{-}inv\ Tip = True$   
 $| tree\text{-}max\text{-}inv\ (Node\ l\ it\ m\ r) \iff (tree\text{-}max\text{-}inv\ l \wedge tree\text{-}max\text{-}inv\ r \wedge m = max3\ it\ (tmax\ l)\ (tmax\ r))$   
*<ML>*

**lemma** *tree-max-is-max* [resolve]:  
 $tree\text{-}max\text{-}inv\ t \implies it \in tree\text{-}set\ t \implies high\ (int\ it) \leq tmax\ t$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *tmax-exists* [backward]:  
 $tree\text{-}max\text{-}inv\ t \implies t \neq Tip \implies \exists p \in tree\text{-}set\ t. high\ (int\ p) = tmax\ t$   
*<proof>*

For insertion

**lemma** *max3-insert* [rewrite]:  $max3\ it\ 0\ 0 = high\ (int\ it)$  *<proof>*

*<ML>*

### 11.4 Condition on the values

**definition** *tree-interval-inv* ::  $interval\text{-}tree \Rightarrow bool$  **where** [rewrite]:  
 $tree\text{-}interval\text{-}inv\ t \iff (\forall p \in tree\text{-}set\ t. is\text{-}interval\ (int\ p))$

**definition** *is-interval-tree* ::  $interval\text{-}tree \Rightarrow bool$  **where** [rewrite]:  
 $is\text{-}interval\text{-}tree\ t \iff (tree\text{-}sorted\ t \wedge tree\text{-}max\text{-}inv\ t \wedge tree\text{-}interval\text{-}inv\ t)$

**lemma** *is-interval-tree-lr* [forward]:  
 $is\text{-}interval\text{-}tree\ (Node\ l\ x\ m\ r) \implies is\text{-}interval\text{-}tree\ l \wedge is\text{-}interval\text{-}tree\ r$  *<proof>*

## 11.5 Insertion on trees

**fun** *insert* :: *nat idx-interval*  $\Rightarrow$  *interval-tree*  $\Rightarrow$  *interval-tree* **where**  
*insert* *x Tip* = *Node Tip x (high (int x)) Tip*  
| *insert* *x (Node l y m r)* =  
  (*if* *x = y* *then Node l y m r*  
  *else if* *x < y* *then*  
    *let* *l' = insert x l in*  
    *Node l' y (max3 y (tmax l') (tmax r)) r*  
  *else*  
    *let* *r' = insert x r in*  
    *Node l y (max3 y (tmax l) (tmax r')) r')*  
⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *tree-insert-in-traverse* [*rewrite*]:  
*tree-sorted t*  $\Longrightarrow$  *in-traverse (insert x t) = ordered-insert x (in-traverse t)*  
⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *tree-insert-max-inv* [*forward*]:  
*tree-max-inv t*  $\Longrightarrow$  *tree-max-inv (insert x t)*  
⟨*proof*⟩

Correctness of insertion.

**theorem** *tree-insert-all-inv* [*forward*]:  
*is-interval-tree t*  $\Longrightarrow$  *is-interval (int it)*  $\Longrightarrow$  *is-interval-tree (insert it t)* ⟨*proof*⟩

**theorem** *tree-insert-on-set* [*rewrite*]:  
*tree-sorted t*  $\Longrightarrow$  *tree-set (insert it t) = {it}  $\cup$  tree-set t* ⟨*proof*⟩

## 11.6 Deletion on trees

**fun** *del-min* :: *interval-tree*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat idx-interval*  $\times$  *interval-tree* **where**  
*del-min Tip* = *undefined*  
| *del-min (Node lt v m rt)* =  
  (*if* *lt = Tip* *then (v, rt)* *else*  
  *let* *lt' = snd (del-min lt) in*  
  (*fst (del-min lt), Node lt' v (max3 v (tmax lt') (tmax rt)) rt*)  
⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *delete-min-del-hd*:  
*t  $\neq$  Tip*  $\Longrightarrow$  *fst (del-min t)  $\#$  in-traverse (snd (del-min t)) = in-traverse t*  
⟨*proof*⟩  
⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *delete-min-max-inv* [*forward-arg*]:  
*tree-max-inv t*  $\Longrightarrow$  *t  $\neq$  Tip*  $\Longrightarrow$  *tree-max-inv (snd (del-min t))*  
⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *delete-min-on-set*:  
*t  $\neq$  Tip*  $\Longrightarrow$  *{fst (del-min t)}  $\cup$  tree-set (snd (del-min t)) = tree-set t* ⟨*proof*⟩

$\langle ML \rangle$

**lemma** *delete-min-interval-inv* [forward-arg]:

$tree\text{-}interval\text{-}inv\ t \implies t \neq Tip \implies tree\text{-}interval\text{-}inv\ (snd\ (del\text{-}min\ t))$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *delete-min-all-inv* [forward-arg]:

$is\text{-}interval\text{-}tree\ t \implies t \neq Tip \implies is\text{-}interval\text{-}tree\ (snd\ (del\text{-}min\ t))$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**fun** *delete-elt-tree* :: *interval-tree*  $\Rightarrow$  *interval-tree* **where**

*delete-elt-tree* *Tip* = *undefined*  
| *delete-elt-tree* (*Node* *lt* *x* *m* *rt*) =  
  (*if* *lt* = *Tip* *then* *rt* *else if* *rt* = *Tip* *then* *lt* *else*  
    *let* *x'* = *fst* (*del-min* *rt*);  
      *rt'* = *snd* (*del-min* *rt*);  
      *m'* = *max3* *x'* (*tmax* *lt*) (*tmax* *rt'*) *in*  
      *Node* *lt* (*fst* (*del-min* *rt*)) *m'* *rt'*)

$\langle ML \rangle$

**lemma** *delete-elt-in-traverse* [rewrite]:

$in\text{-}traverse\ (delete\text{-}elt\text{-}tree\ (Node\ lt\ x\ m\ rt)) = in\text{-}traverse\ lt\ @\ in\text{-}traverse\ rt$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *delete-elt-max-inv* [forward-arg]:

$tree\text{-}max\text{-}inv\ t \implies t \neq Tip \implies tree\text{-}max\text{-}inv\ (delete\text{-}elt\text{-}tree\ t)$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *delete-elt-on-set* [rewrite]:

$t \neq Tip \implies tree\text{-}set\ (delete\text{-}elt\text{-}tree\ (Node\ lt\ x\ m\ rt)) = tree\text{-}set\ lt\ \cup\ tree\text{-}set\ rt$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *delete-elt-interval-inv* [forward-arg]:

$tree\text{-}interval\text{-}inv\ t \implies t \neq Tip \implies tree\text{-}interval\text{-}inv\ (delete\text{-}elt\text{-}tree\ t)$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *delete-elt-all-inv* [forward-arg]:

$is\text{-}interval\text{-}tree\ t \implies t \neq Tip \implies is\text{-}interval\text{-}tree\ (delete\text{-}elt\text{-}tree\ t)$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**fun** *delete* :: *nat* *idx-interval*  $\Rightarrow$  *interval-tree*  $\Rightarrow$  *interval-tree* **where**

*delete* *x* *Tip* = *Tip*  
| *delete* *x* (*Node* *l* *y* *m* *r*) =  
  (*if* *x* = *y* *then* *delete-elt-tree* (*Node* *l* *y* *m* *r*)  
    *else if* *x* < *y* *then*  
      *let* *l'* = *delete* *x* *l*;  
      *m'* = *max3* *y* (*tmax* *l'*) (*tmax* *r*) *in* *Node* *l'* *y* *m'* *r*  
    *else*  
      *let* *r'* = *delete* *x* *r*;  
      *m'* = *max3* *y* (*tmax* *l*) (*tmax* *r'*) *in* *Node* *l* *y* *m'* *r'*)

$\langle ML \rangle$

**lemma** *tree-delete-in-traverse* [rewrite]:

$tree\text{-}sorted\ t \implies in\text{-}traverse\ (delete\ x\ t) = remove\text{-}elt\text{-}list\ x\ (in\text{-}traverse\ t)$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *tree-delete-max-inv* [*forward*]:  
 $tree-max-inv\ t \implies tree-max-inv\ (delete\ x\ t)$   
*<proof>*

Correctness of deletion.

**theorem** *tree-delete-all-inv* [*forward*]:  
 $is-interval-tree\ t \implies is-interval-tree\ (delete\ x\ t)$   
*<proof>*

**theorem** *tree-delete-on-set* [*rewrite*]:  
 $tree-sorted\ t \implies tree-set\ (delete\ x\ t) = tree-set\ t - \{x\}$  *<proof>*

## 11.7 Search on interval trees

**fun** *search* :: *interval-tree*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat interval*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* **where**  
  *search* *Tip* *x* = *False*  
| *search* (*Node* *l y m r*) *x* =  
  (*if is-overlap* (*int* *y*) *x* *then True*  
  *else if* *l*  $\neq$  *Tip*  $\wedge$  *tmax* *l*  $\geq$  *low* *x* *then search* *l* *x*  
  *else search* *r* *x*)  
*<ML>*

Correctness of search

**theorem** *search-correct* [*rewrite*]:  
 $is-interval-tree\ t \implies is-interval\ x \implies search\ t\ x \longleftrightarrow has-overlap\ (tree-set\ t)\ x$   
*<proof>*

**end**

## 12 Quicksort

**theory** *Quicksort*  
  **imports** *Arrays-Ex*  
**begin**

Functional version of quicksort.

Implementation of quicksort is largely based on theory *Imperative\_Quicksort* in *HOL/Imperative\_HOL/ex* in the Isabelle library.

### 12.1 Outer remains

**definition** *outer-remains* :: '*a list*  $\Rightarrow$  '*a list*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* **where** [*rewrite*]:  
 $outer-remains\ xs\ xs'\ l\ r \longleftrightarrow (length\ xs = length\ xs' \wedge (\forall i. i < l \vee r < i \longrightarrow xs\ !\ i = xs'\ !\ i))$

**lemma** *outer-remains-length* [*forward*]:

$outer\text{-remains } xs \ xs' \ l \ r \implies length \ xs = length \ xs' \ \langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *outer-remains-eq* [rewrite-back]:

$outer\text{-remains } xs \ xs' \ l \ r \implies i < l \implies xs \ ! \ i = xs' \ ! \ i$   
 $outer\text{-remains } xs \ xs' \ l \ r \implies r < i \implies xs \ ! \ i = xs' \ ! \ i \ \langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *outer-remains-sublist* [backward2]:

$outer\text{-remains } xs \ xs' \ l \ r \implies i < l \implies take \ i \ xs = take \ i \ xs'$   
 $outer\text{-remains } xs \ xs' \ l \ r \implies r < i \implies drop \ i \ xs = drop \ i \ xs'$   
 $i \leq j \implies j \leq length \ xs \implies outer\text{-remains } xs \ xs' \ l \ r \implies j \leq l \implies sublist \ i \ j \ xs$   
 $= sublist \ i \ j \ xs'$   
 $i \leq j \implies j \leq length \ xs \implies outer\text{-remains } xs \ xs' \ l \ r \implies i > r \implies sublist \ i \ j \ xs$   
 $= sublist \ i \ j \ xs' \ \langle proof \rangle$   
 (ML)

## 12.2 part1 function

**function** *part1* :: ('a::linorder) list  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  'a  $\Rightarrow$  (nat  $\times$  'a list) **where**

$part1 \ xs \ l \ r \ a =$  (  
   if  $r \leq l$  then  $(r, xs)$   
   else if  $xs \ ! \ l \leq a$  then  $part1 \ xs \ (l + 1) \ r \ a$   
   else  $part1 \ (list\text{-swap } xs \ l \ r) \ l \ (r - 1) \ a$

$\langle proof \rangle$

**termination**  $\langle proof \rangle$

(ML)

**lemma** *part1-basic*:

$r < length \ xs \implies l \leq r \implies (rs, xs') = part1 \ xs \ l \ r \ a \implies$   
 $outer\text{-remains } xs \ xs' \ l \ r \wedge mset \ xs' = mset \ xs \wedge l \leq rs \wedge rs \leq r$

$\langle proof \rangle$

(ML)

**lemma** *part1-partitions1* [backward]:

$r < length \ xs \implies (rs, xs') = part1 \ xs \ l \ r \ a \implies l \leq i \implies i < rs \implies xs' \ ! \ i \leq a$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *part1-partitions2* [backward]:

$r < length \ xs \implies (rs, xs') = part1 \ xs \ l \ r \ a \implies rs < i \implies i \leq r \implies xs' \ ! \ i \geq a$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

## 12.3 Paritition function

**definition** *partition* :: ('a::linorder list)  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  (nat  $\times$  'a list) **where**  
 [rewrite]:

$partition \ xs \ l \ r =$  (  
   let  $p = xs \ ! \ r$ ;  
    $(m, xs') = part1 \ xs \ l \ (r - 1) \ p$ ;  
    $m' =$  if  $xs' \ ! \ m \leq p$  then  $m + 1$  else  $m$   
   in  
    $(m', list\text{-swap } xs' \ m' \ r)$ )

$\langle ML \rangle$

**lemma** *partition-basic*:

$l < r \implies r < \text{length } xs \implies (rs, xs') = \text{partition } xs \ l \ r \implies$   
 $\text{outer-remains } xs \ xs' \ l \ r \wedge \text{mset } xs' = \text{mset } xs \wedge l \leq rs \wedge rs \leq r \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

**lemma** *partition-partitions1* [forward]:

$l < r \implies r < \text{length } xs \implies (rs, xs') = \text{partition } xs \ l \ r \implies$   
 $x \in \text{set } (\text{sublist } l \ rs \ xs') \implies x \leq xs' \ ! \ rs$

$\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *partition-partitions2* [forward]:

$l < r \implies r < \text{length } xs \implies (rs, xs'') = \text{partition } xs \ l \ r \implies$   
 $x \in \text{set } (\text{sublist } (rs + 1) \ (r + 1) \ xs'') \implies x \geq xs'' \ ! \ rs$

$\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

**lemma** *quicksort-term1*:

$\neg r \leq l \implies \neg \text{length } xs \leq r \implies x = \text{partition } xs \ l \ r \implies (p, xs1) = x \implies p -$   
 $\text{Suc } l < r - l$

$\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *quicksort-term2*:

$\neg r \leq l \implies \neg \text{length } xs \leq r \implies x = \text{partition } xs \ l \ r \implies (p, xs2) = x \implies r -$   
 $\text{Suc } p < r - l$

$\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

## 12.4 Quicksort function

**function** *quicksort* :: ('a::linorder) list  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  'a list **where**

*quicksort*  $xs \ l \ r =$  (  
  if  $l \geq r$  then  $xs$   
  else if  $r \geq \text{length } xs$  then  $xs$   
  else let  
     $(p, xs1) = \text{partition } xs \ l \ r;$   
     $xs2 = \text{quicksort } xs1 \ l \ (p - 1)$   
  in  
     $\text{quicksort } xs2 \ (p + 1) \ r$ )

$\langle \text{proof} \rangle$  **termination**  $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *quicksort-basic* [rewrite-arg]:

$\text{mset } (\text{quicksort } xs \ l \ r) = \text{mset } xs \wedge \text{outer-remains } xs \ (\text{quicksort } xs \ l \ r) \ l \ r$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *quicksort-trivial1* [rewrite]:

$l \geq r \implies \text{quicksort } xs \ l \ r = xs$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$



**lemma** *quicksort-trivial2* [rewrite]:

$r \geq \text{length } xs \implies \text{quicksort } xs \ l \ r = xs$   
(proof)

**lemma** *quicksort-permutes* [resolve]:

$xs' = \text{quicksort } xs \ l \ r \implies \text{set } (\text{sublist } l \ (r + 1) \ xs') = \text{set } (\text{sublist } l \ (r + 1) \ xs)$   
(proof)

**lemma** *quicksort-sorts* [forward-arg]:

$r < \text{length } xs \implies \text{sorted } (\text{sublist } l \ (r + 1) \ (\text{quicksort } xs \ l \ r))$   
(proof)

Main result: correctness of functional quicksort.

**theorem** *quicksort-sorts-all* [rewrite]:

$xs \neq [] \implies \text{quicksort } xs \ 0 \ (\text{length } xs - 1) = \text{sort } xs$   
(proof)

end

## 13 Indexed priority queues

**theory** *Indexed-PQueue*

**imports** *Arrays-Ex Mapping-Str*

**begin**

Verification of indexed priority queue: functional part. The data structure is also verified by Lammich in [4].

### 13.1 Successor functions, eq-pred predicate

**fun** *s1* :: *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat* **where** *s1* *m* = 2 \* *m* + 1

**fun** *s2* :: *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat* **where** *s2* *m* = 2 \* *m* + 2

**lemma** *s-inj* [forward]:

$s1 \ m = s1 \ m' \implies m = m' \ s2 \ m = s2 \ m' \implies m = m'$  (proof)

**lemma** *s-neq* [resolve]:

$s1 \ m \neq s2 \ m' \ s1 \ m > m \ s2 \ m > m \ s2 \ m > s1 \ m$  (proof)  
(ML)

**inductive** *eq-pred* :: *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* **where**

*eq-pred* *n* *n*  
| *eq-pred* *n* *m*  $\implies$  *eq-pred* *n* (*s1* *m*)  
| *eq-pred* *n* *m*  $\implies$  *eq-pred* *n* (*s2* *m*)  
(ML)

**lemma** *eq-pred-parent1* [forward]:

$\text{eq-pred } i \ (s1 \ k) \implies i \neq s1 \ k \implies \text{eq-pred } i \ k$   
(proof)

**lemma** *eq-pred-parent2* [forward]:  
 $eq\text{-}pred\ i\ (s2\ k) \implies i \neq s2\ k \implies eq\text{-}pred\ i\ k$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *eq-pred-cases*:  
 $eq\text{-}pred\ i\ j \implies eq\text{-}pred\ (s1\ i)\ j \vee eq\text{-}pred\ (s2\ i)\ j \vee j = i \vee j = s1\ i \vee j = s2\ i$   
 ⟨proof⟩  
 ⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *eq-pred-le* [forward]:  $eq\text{-}pred\ i\ j \implies i \leq j$   
 ⟨proof⟩

## 13.2 Heap property

The corresponding tree is a heap

**definition** *is-heap* :: ('a × 'b::linorder) list ⇒ bool **where** [rewrite]:  
 $is\text{-}heap\ xs = (\forall i\ j. eq\text{-}pred\ i\ j \longrightarrow j < length\ xs \longrightarrow snd\ (xs\ !\ i) \leq snd\ (xs\ !\ j))$

**lemma** *is-heapD*:  
 $is\text{-}heap\ xs \implies j < length\ xs \implies eq\text{-}pred\ i\ j \implies snd\ (xs\ !\ i) \leq snd\ (xs\ !\ j)$  ⟨proof⟩  
 ⟨ML⟩

## 13.3 Bubble-down

The corresponding tree is a heap, except k is not necessarily smaller than its descendents.

**definition** *is-heap-partial1* :: ('a × 'b::linorder) list ⇒ nat ⇒ bool **where** [rewrite]:  
 $is\text{-}heap\text{-}partial1\ xs\ k = (\forall i\ j. eq\text{-}pred\ i\ j \longrightarrow i \neq k \longrightarrow j < length\ xs \longrightarrow snd\ (xs\ !\ i) \leq snd\ (xs\ !\ j))$

Two cases of switching with s1 k.

**lemma** *bubble-down1*:  
 $s1\ k < length\ xs \implies is\text{-}heap\text{-}partial1\ xs\ k \implies snd\ (xs\ !\ k) > snd\ (xs\ !\ s1\ k) \implies$   
 $snd\ (xs\ !\ s1\ k) \leq snd\ (xs\ !\ s2\ k) \implies is\text{-}heap\text{-}partial1\ (list\text{-}swap\ xs\ k\ (s1\ k))\ (s1\ k)$  ⟨proof⟩  
 ⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *bubble-down2*:  
 $s1\ k < length\ xs \implies is\text{-}heap\text{-}partial1\ xs\ k \implies snd\ (xs\ !\ k) > snd\ (xs\ !\ s1\ k) \implies$   
 $s2\ k \geq length\ xs \implies is\text{-}heap\text{-}partial1\ (list\text{-}swap\ xs\ k\ (s1\ k))\ (s1\ k)$  ⟨proof⟩  
 ⟨ML⟩

One case of switching with s2 k.

**lemma** *bubble-down3*:  
 $s2\ k < length\ xs \implies is\text{-}heap\text{-}partial1\ xs\ k \implies snd\ (xs\ !\ s1\ k) > snd\ (xs\ !\ s2\ k)$   
 $\implies$

$snd (xs ! k) > snd (xs ! s2 k) \implies xs' = list\text{-}swap\ xs\ k\ (s2\ k) \implies is\text{-}heap\text{-}partial1\ xs'\ (s2\ k)$  *<proof>*  
*<ML>*

### 13.4 Bubble-up

**fun** *par* :: *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat* **where**  
*par* *m* = (*m* - 1) *div* 2  
*<ML>*

**lemma** *ps-inverse* [*rewrite*]: *par* (*s1* *k*) = *k* *par* (*s2* *k*) = *k* *<proof>*

**lemma** *p-basic*: *m*  $\neq$  0  $\implies$  *par* *m* < *m* *<proof>*  
*<ML>*

**lemma** *p-cases*: *m*  $\neq$  0  $\implies$  *m* = *s1* (*par* *m*)  $\vee$  *m* = *s2* (*par* *m*) *<proof>*  
*<ML>*

**lemma** *eq-pred-p-next*:  
*i*  $\neq$  0  $\implies$  *eq-pred* *i* *j*  $\implies$  *eq-pred* (*par* *i*) *j*  
*<proof>*  
*<ML>*

**lemma** *heap-implies-hd-min* [*resolve*]:  
*is-heap* *xs*  $\implies$  *i* < *length* *xs*  $\implies$  *xs*  $\neq$  []  $\implies$  *snd* (*hd* *xs*)  $\leq$  *snd* (*xs* ! *i*)  
*<proof>*

The corresponding tree is a heap, except *k* is not necessarily greater than its ancestors.

**definition** *is-heap-partial2* :: (*'a*  $\times$  *'b::linorder*) *list*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* **where** [*rewrite*]:  
*is-heap-partial2* *xs* *k* = ( $\forall$  *i* *j*. *eq-pred* *i* *j*  $\longrightarrow$  *j* < *length* *xs*  $\longrightarrow$  *j*  $\neq$  *k*  $\longrightarrow$  *snd* (*xs* ! *i*)  $\leq$  *snd* (*xs* ! *j*))

**lemma** *bubble-up1* [*forward*]:  
*k* < *length* *xs*  $\implies$  *is-heap-partial2* *xs* *k*  $\implies$  *snd* (*xs* ! *k*) < *snd* (*xs* ! *par* *k*)  $\implies$  *k*  $\neq$  0  $\implies$   
*is-heap-partial2* (*list-swap* *xs* *k* (*par* *k*)) (*par* *k*) *<proof>*

**lemma** *bubble-up2* [*forward*]:  
*k* < *length* *xs*  $\implies$  *is-heap-partial2* *xs* *k*  $\implies$  *snd* (*xs* ! *k*)  $\geq$  *snd* (*xs* ! *par* *k*)  $\implies$  *k*  $\neq$  0  $\implies$   
*is-heap* *xs* *<proof>*  
*<ML>*

### 13.5 Indexed priority queue

**type-synonym** *'a* *idx-pqueue* = (*nat*  $\times$  *'a*) *list*  $\times$  *nat* *option* *list*

**fun** *index-of-pqueue* :: *'a* *idx-pqueue*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* **where**

$index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (xs, m) = ($   
 $\quad (\forall i < \text{length } xs. \text{fst } (xs ! i) < \text{length } m \wedge m ! (\text{fst } (xs ! i)) = \text{Some } i) \wedge$   
 $\quad (\forall i. \forall k < \text{length } m. m ! k = \text{Some } i \longrightarrow i < \text{length } xs \wedge \text{fst } (xs ! i) = k))$   
 $\langle ML \rangle$

**lemma** *index-of-pqueueD1*:  
 $i < \text{length } xs \implies index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (xs, m) \implies$   
 $\quad \text{fst } (xs ! i) < \text{length } m \wedge m ! (\text{fst } (xs ! i)) = \text{Some } i \langle proof \rangle$   
 $\langle ML \rangle$

**lemma** *index-of-pqueueD2* [forward]:  
 $k < \text{length } m \implies index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (xs, m) \implies$   
 $\quad m ! k = \text{Some } i \implies i < \text{length } xs \wedge \text{fst } (xs ! i) = k \langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *index-of-pqueueD3* [forward]:  
 $index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (xs, m) \implies p \in \text{set } xs \implies \text{fst } p < \text{length } m$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$   
 $\langle ML \rangle$

**lemma** *has-index-unique-key* [forward]:  
 $index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (xs, m) \implies \text{unique}\text{-keys}\text{-set } (\text{set } xs)$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *has-index-keys-of* [rewrite]:  
 $index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (xs, m) \implies \text{has}\text{-key}\text{-alist } xs \ k \longleftrightarrow (k < \text{length } m \wedge m ! k \neq$   
 $\text{None})$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *has-index-distinct* [forward]:  
 $index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (xs, m) \implies \text{distinct } xs$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

## 13.6 Basic operations on indexed\_queue

**fun** *idx-pqueue-swap-fun* ::  $(\text{nat} \times 'a) \text{ list} \times \text{nat option list} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow (\text{nat}$   
 $\times 'a) \text{ list} \times \text{nat option list}$  **where**  
 $\quad \text{idx}\text{-pqueue}\text{-swap}\text{-fun } (xs, m) \ i \ j = ($   
 $\quad \text{list}\text{-swap } xs \ i \ j, ((m [\text{fst } (xs ! i) := \text{Some } j]) [\text{fst } (xs ! j) := \text{Some } i]))$

**lemma** *index-of-pqueue-swap* [forward-arg]:  
 $i < \text{length } xs \implies j < \text{length } xs \implies index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (xs, m) \implies$   
 $\quad index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (\text{idx}\text{-pqueue}\text{-swap}\text{-fun } (xs, m) \ i \ j)$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *fst-idx-pqueue-swap* [rewrite]:  
 $\text{fst } (\text{idx}\text{-pqueue}\text{-swap}\text{-fun } (xs, m) \ i \ j) = \text{list}\text{-swap } xs \ i \ j$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *snd-idx-pqueue-swap* [rewrite]:

$length (snd (idx-pqueue-swap-fun (xs, m) i j)) = length m$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**fun** *idx-pqueue-push-fun* :: *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *'a*  $\Rightarrow$  *'a idx-pqueue*  $\Rightarrow$  *'a idx-pqueue* **where**  
*idx-pqueue-push-fun* *k v (xs, m)* = (*xs* @ [(*k*, *v*)], *list-update m k (Some (length xs))*)

**lemma** *idx-pqueue-push-correct* [*forward-arg*]:  
*index-of-pqueue (xs, m)  $\Longrightarrow$  k < length m  $\Longrightarrow$   $\neg$ has-key-alist xs k  $\Longrightarrow$*   
*r = idx-pqueue-push-fun k v (xs, m)  $\Longrightarrow$*   
*index-of-pqueue r  $\wedge$  fst r = xs @ [(k, v)]  $\wedge$  length (snd r) = length m*  
 ⟨proof⟩

**fun** *idx-pqueue-pop-fun* :: *'a idx-pqueue*  $\Rightarrow$  *'a idx-pqueue* **where**  
*idx-pqueue-pop-fun (xs, m)* = (*butlast xs*, *list-update m (fst (last xs)) None*)

**lemma** *idx-pqueue-pop-correct* [*forward-arg*]:  
*index-of-pqueue (xs, m)  $\Longrightarrow$  xs  $\neq$  []  $\Longrightarrow$  r = idx-pqueue-pop-fun (xs, m)  $\Longrightarrow$*   
*index-of-pqueue r  $\wedge$  fst r = butlast xs  $\wedge$  length (snd r) = length m*  
 ⟨proof⟩

### 13.7 Bubble up and down

**function** *idx-bubble-down-fun* :: *'a::linorder idx-pqueue*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *'a idx-pqueue*  
**where**

*idx-bubble-down-fun (xs, m) k* = (  
 if *s2 k < length xs* then  
 if *snd (xs ! s1 k)  $\leq$  snd (xs ! s2 k)* then  
 if *snd (xs ! k) > snd (xs ! s1 k)* then  
*idx-bubble-down-fun (idx-pqueue-swap-fun (xs, m) k (s1 k)) (s1 k)*  
 else (*xs, m*)  
 else  
 if *snd (xs ! k) > snd (xs ! s2 k)* then  
*idx-bubble-down-fun (idx-pqueue-swap-fun (xs, m) k (s2 k)) (s2 k)*  
 else (*xs, m*)  
 else if *s1 k < length xs* then  
 if *snd (xs ! k) > snd (xs ! s1 k)* then  
*idx-bubble-down-fun (idx-pqueue-swap-fun (xs, m) k (s1 k)) (s1 k)*  
 else (*xs, m*)  
 else (*xs, m*))

⟨proof⟩

**termination** ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *idx-bubble-down-fun-correct*:  
*r = idx-bubble-down-fun x k  $\Longrightarrow$  is-heap-partial1 (fst x) k  $\Longrightarrow$*   
*is-heap (fst r)  $\wedge$  mset (fst r) = mset (fst x)  $\wedge$  length (snd r) = length (snd x)*  
 ⟨proof⟩  
 ⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *idx-bubble-down-fun-correct2* [forward]:  
 $index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } x \implies index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (idx\text{-bubble}\text{-down}\text{-fun } x \ k)$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**fun** *idx-bubble-up-fun* :: 'a::linorder *idx-pqueue*  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  'a *idx-pqueue* **where**  
*idx-bubble-up-fun* (xs, m) k = (  
 if k = 0 then (xs, m)  
 else if k < length xs then  
 if snd (xs ! k) < snd (xs ! par k) then  
*idx-bubble-up-fun* (*idx-pqueue-swap-fun* (xs, m) k (par k)) (par k)  
 else (xs, m)  
 else (xs, m))

**lemma** *idx-bubble-up-fun-correct*:  
 $r = idx\text{-bubble}\text{-up}\text{-fun } x \ k \implies is\text{-heap}\text{-partial2 } (fst \ x) \ k \implies$   
 $is\text{-heap } (fst \ r) \wedge mset \ (fst \ r) = mset \ (fst \ x) \wedge length \ (snd \ r) = length \ (snd \ x)$   
 ⟨proof⟩  
 ⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *idx-bubble-up-fun-correct2* [forward]:  
 $index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } x \implies index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (idx\text{-bubble}\text{-up}\text{-fun } x \ k)$   
 ⟨proof⟩

## 13.8 Main operations

**fun** *delete-min-idx-pqueue-fun* :: 'a::linorder *idx-pqueue*  $\Rightarrow$  (nat  $\times$  'a)  $\times$  'a *idx-pqueue*  
**where**  
*delete-min-idx-pqueue-fun* (xs, m) = (  
 let (xs', m') = *idx-pqueue-swap-fun* (xs, m) 0 (length xs - 1);  
 a'' = *idx-pqueue-pop-fun* (xs', m')  
 in (last xs', *idx-bubble-down-fun* a'' 0))

**lemma** *delete-min-idx-pqueue-correct*:  
 $index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (xs, m) \implies xs \neq [] \implies res = delete\text{-min}\text{-idx}\text{-pqueue}\text{-fun } (xs, m)$   
 $\implies$   
 $index\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (snd \ res)$   
 ⟨proof⟩  
 ⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *hd-last-swap-eval-last* [rewrite]:  
 $xs \neq [] \implies last \ (list\text{-swap } xs \ 0 \ (length \ xs - 1)) = hd \ xs$   
 ⟨proof⟩

Correctness of delete-min.

**theorem** *delete-min-idx-pqueue-correct2*:  
 $is\text{-heap } xs \implies xs \neq [] \implies res = delete\text{-min}\text{-idx}\text{-pqueue}\text{-fun } (xs, m) \implies in\text{-dex}\text{-of}\text{-pqueue } (xs, m) \implies$   
 $is\text{-heap } (fst \ (snd \ res)) \wedge fst \ res = hd \ xs \wedge length \ (snd \ (snd \ res)) = length \ m \wedge$   
 $map\text{-of}\text{-alist } (fst \ (snd \ res)) = delete\text{-map } (fst \ (fst \ res)) \ (map\text{-of}\text{-alist } xs)$

*<proof>*  
*<ML>*

**fun** *insert-idx-pqueue-fun* :: *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *'a::linorder*  $\Rightarrow$  *'a idx-pqueue*  $\Rightarrow$  *'a idx-pqueue*  
**where**

*insert-idx-pqueue-fun* *k v x* = (  
  *let* *x'* = *idx-pqueue-push-fun* *k v x* *in*  
  *idx-bubble-up-fun* *x'* (*length* (*fst* *x'*) - 1))

**lemma** *insert-idx-pqueue-correct* [*forward-arg*]:

*index-of-pqueue* (*xs*, *m*)  $\Longrightarrow$  *k* < *length* *m*  $\Longrightarrow$   $\neg$ *has-key-alist* *xs* *k*  $\Longrightarrow$   
*index-of-pqueue* (*insert-idx-pqueue-fun* *k v* (*xs*, *m*))

*<proof>*

Correctness of insertion.

**theorem** *insert-idx-pqueue-correct2*:

*index-of-pqueue* (*xs*, *m*)  $\Longrightarrow$  *is-heap* *xs*  $\Longrightarrow$  *k* < *length* *m*  $\Longrightarrow$   $\neg$ *has-key-alist* *xs* *k*  
 $\Longrightarrow$

*r* = *insert-idx-pqueue-fun* *k v* (*xs*, *m*)  $\Longrightarrow$   
*is-heap* (*fst* *r*)  $\wedge$  *length* (*snd* *r*) = *length* *m*  $\wedge$   
*map-of-alist* (*fst* *r*) = *map-of-alist* *xs* { *k*  $\rightarrow$  *v* }

*<proof>*

*<ML>*

**fun** *update-idx-pqueue-fun* :: *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *'a::linorder*  $\Rightarrow$  *'a idx-pqueue*  $\Rightarrow$  *'a idx-pqueue*  
**where**

*update-idx-pqueue-fun* *k v* (*xs*, *m*) = (  
  *if* *m* ! *k* = *None* *then*  
    *insert-idx-pqueue-fun* *k v* (*xs*, *m*)  
  *else let*  
    *i* = *the* (*m* ! *k*);  
    *xs'* = *list-update* *xs* *i* (*k*, *v*)  
  *in*  
    *if* *snd* (*xs* ! *i*)  $\leq$  *v* *then* *idx-bubble-down-fun* (*xs'*, *m*) *i*  
    *else* *idx-bubble-up-fun* (*xs'*, *m*) *i*)

**lemma** *update-idx-pqueue-correct* [*forward-arg*]:

*index-of-pqueue* (*xs*, *m*)  $\Longrightarrow$  *k* < *length* *m*  $\Longrightarrow$   
*index-of-pqueue* (*update-idx-pqueue-fun* *k v* (*xs*, *m*))

*<proof>*

Correctness of update.

**theorem** *update-idx-pqueue-correct2*:

*index-of-pqueue* (*xs*, *m*)  $\Longrightarrow$  *is-heap* *xs*  $\Longrightarrow$  *k* < *length* *m*  $\Longrightarrow$   
*r* = *update-idx-pqueue-fun* *k v* (*xs*, *m*)  $\Longrightarrow$   
*is-heap* (*fst* *r*)  $\wedge$  *length* (*snd* *r*) = *length* *m*  $\wedge$   
*map-of-alist* (*fst* *r*) = *map-of-alist* *xs* { *k*  $\rightarrow$  *v* }

*<proof>*

*<ML>*

end

## 14 Red-black trees

```
theory RBTree
  imports Lists-Ex
begin
```

Verification of functional red-black trees. For general technique, see Lists\_Ex.thy.

### 14.1 Definition of RBT

```
datatype color = R | B
datatype ('a, 'b) rbt =
  Leaf
| Node (lsub: ('a, 'b) rbt) (cl: color) (key: 'a) (val: 'b) (rsub: ('a, 'b) rbt)
where
  cl Leaf = B
```

$\langle ML \rangle$

**lemma** *not-R* [forward]:  $c \neq R \implies c = B$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *not-B* [forward]:  $c \neq B \implies c = R$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *red-not-leaf* [forward]:  $cl\ t = R \implies t \neq Leaf$   $\langle proof \rangle$

### 14.2 RBT invariants

```
fun black-depth :: ('a, 'b) rbt  $\Rightarrow$  nat where
  black-depth Leaf = 0
| black-depth (Node l R k v r) = black-depth l
| black-depth (Node l B k v r) = black-depth l + 1
 $\langle ML \rangle$ 
```

```
fun cl-inv :: ('a, 'b) rbt  $\Rightarrow$  bool where
  cl-inv Leaf = True
| cl-inv (Node l R k v r) = (cl-inv l  $\wedge$  cl-inv r  $\wedge$  cl l = B  $\wedge$  cl r = B)
| cl-inv (Node l B k v r) = (cl-inv l  $\wedge$  cl-inv r)
 $\langle ML \rangle$ 
```

```
fun bd-inv :: ('a, 'b) rbt  $\Rightarrow$  bool where
  bd-inv Leaf = True
| bd-inv (Node l c k v r) = (bd-inv l  $\wedge$  bd-inv r  $\wedge$  black-depth l = black-depth r)
 $\langle ML \rangle$ 
```

**definition** *is-rbt* :: ('a, 'b) rbt  $\Rightarrow$  bool **where** [rewrite]:  
 $is-rbt\ t = (cl-inv\ t \wedge bd-inv\ t)$

**lemma** *cl-invI*:  $cl-inv\ l \implies cl-inv\ r \implies cl-inv\ (Node\ l\ B\ k\ v\ r)$   $\langle proof \rangle$



$\langle ML \rangle$

**lemma** *bd-invI*:  $bd\text{-inv } l \implies bd\text{-inv } r \implies black\text{-depth } l = black\text{-depth } r \implies bd\text{-inv}$   
 $(Node\ l\ c\ k\ v\ r)$   $\langle proof \rangle$   
 $\langle ML \rangle$

**lemma** *is-rbt-rec* [*forward*]:  $is\text{-rbt } (Node\ l\ c\ k\ v\ r) \implies is\text{-rbt } l \wedge is\text{-rbt } r$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

### 14.3 Balancedness of RBT

**lemma** *two-distrib* [*rewrite*]:  $(2::nat) * (a + 1) = 2 * a + 2$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**fun** *min-depth* ::  $('a, 'b)$  *rbt*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat* **where**  
  *min-depth* *Leaf* = 0  
| *min-depth*  $(Node\ l\ c\ k\ v\ r) = \min\ (min\text{-depth } l)\ (min\text{-depth } r) + 1$   
 $\langle ML \rangle$

**fun** *max-depth* ::  $('a, 'b)$  *rbt*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat* **where**  
  *max-depth* *Leaf* = 0  
| *max-depth*  $(Node\ l\ c\ k\ v\ r) = \max\ (max\text{-depth } l)\ (max\text{-depth } r) + 1$   
 $\langle ML \rangle$

Balancedness of red-black trees.

**theorem** *rbt-balanced*:  $is\text{-rbt } t \implies max\text{-depth } t \leq 2 * min\text{-depth } t + 1$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

### 14.4 Definition and basic properties of *cl\_inv'*

**fun** *cl\_inv'* ::  $('a, 'b)$  *rbt*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* **where**  
  *cl\_inv'* *Leaf* = *True*  
| *cl\_inv'*  $(Node\ l\ c\ k\ v\ r) = (cl\text{-inv } l \wedge cl\text{-inv } r)$   
 $\langle ML \rangle$

**lemma** *cl\_inv'B* [*forward*, *backward1*]:  
   $cl\text{-inv}'\ t \implies cl\ t = B \implies cl\text{-inv } t$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *cl\_inv'R* [*forward*]:  
   $cl\text{-inv}'\ (Node\ l\ R\ k\ v\ r) \implies cl\ l = B \implies cl\ r = B \implies cl\text{-inv } (Node\ l\ R\ k\ v\ r)$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *cl\_inv-to-cl\_inv'* [*forward*]:  $cl\text{-inv } t \implies cl\text{-inv}'\ t$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *cl\_inv'I* [*forward-arg*]:  
   $cl\text{-inv } l \implies cl\text{-inv } r \implies cl\text{-inv}'\ (Node\ l\ c\ k\ v\ r)$   $\langle proof \rangle$

## 14.5 Set of keys, sortedness

**fun** *rbt-in-traverse* :: ('a, 'b) rbt ⇒ 'a list **where**  
*rbt-in-traverse* Leaf = []  
| *rbt-in-traverse* (Node l c k v r) = *rbt-in-traverse* l @ k # *rbt-in-traverse* r  
⟨ML⟩

**fun** *rbt-set* :: ('a, 'b) rbt ⇒ 'a set **where**  
*rbt-set* Leaf = {}  
| *rbt-set* (Node l c k v r) = {k} ∪ *rbt-set* l ∪ *rbt-set* r  
⟨ML⟩

**fun** *rbt-in-traverse-pairs* :: ('a, 'b) rbt ⇒ ('a × 'b) list **where**  
*rbt-in-traverse-pairs* Leaf = []  
| *rbt-in-traverse-pairs* (Node l c k v r) = *rbt-in-traverse-pairs* l @ (k, v) # *rbt-in-traverse-pairs* r  
⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *rbt-in-traverse-fst* [rewrite]: *map fst (rbt-in-traverse-pairs t) = rbt-in-traverse t*  
⟨proof⟩

**definition** *rbt-map* :: ('a, 'b) rbt ⇒ ('a, 'b) map **where**  
*rbt-map* t = *map-of-alist (rbt-in-traverse-pairs t)*  
⟨ML⟩

**fun** *rbt-sorted* :: ('a::linorder, 'b) rbt ⇒ bool **where**  
*rbt-sorted* Leaf = True  
| *rbt-sorted* (Node l c k v r) = ((∀ x∈*rbt-set* l. x < k) ∧ (∀ x∈*rbt-set* r. k < x) ∧ *rbt-sorted* l ∧ *rbt-sorted* r)  
⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *rbt-sorted-lr* [forward]:  
*rbt-sorted* (Node l c k v r) ⇒ *rbt-sorted* l ∧ *rbt-sorted* r ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *rbt-inorder-preserve-set* [rewrite]:  
*rbt-set* t = *set (rbt-in-traverse t)*  
⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *rbt-inorder-sorted* [rewrite]:  
*rbt-sorted* t ⇔ *strict-sorted (map fst (rbt-in-traverse-pairs t))*  
⟨proof⟩

⟨ML⟩

## 14.6 Balance function

**definition** *balanceR* :: ('a, 'b) rbt ⇒ 'a ⇒ 'b ⇒ ('a, 'b) rbt ⇒ ('a, 'b) rbt **where**  
[rewrite]:  
*balanceR* l k v r =

(if  $cl\ r = R$  then  
   let  $lr = lsub\ r$ ;  $rr = rsub\ r$  in  
   if  $cl\ lr = R$  then  $Node\ (Node\ l\ B\ k\ v\ (lsub\ lr))\ R\ (key\ lr)\ (val\ lr)\ (Node\ (rsub\ lr)\ B\ (key\ r)\ (val\ r)\ rr)$   
   else if  $cl\ rr = R$  then  $Node\ (Node\ l\ B\ k\ v\ lr)\ R\ (key\ r)\ (val\ r)\ (Node\ (lsub\ rr)\ B\ (key\ rr)\ (val\ rr)\ (rsub\ rr))$   
   else  $Node\ l\ B\ k\ v\ r$   
   else  $Node\ l\ B\ k\ v\ r$ )

**definition**  $balance :: ('a, 'b)\ rbt \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'b \Rightarrow ('a, 'b)\ rbt \Rightarrow ('a, 'b)\ rbt$  **where** [rewrite]:

$balance\ l\ k\ v\ r =$   
 (if  $cl\ l = R$  then  
   let  $ll = lsub\ l$ ;  $rl = rsub\ l$  in  
   if  $cl\ ll = R$  then  $Node\ (Node\ (lsub\ ll)\ B\ (key\ ll)\ (val\ ll)\ (rsub\ ll))\ R\ (key\ l)\ (val\ l)\ (Node\ (rsub\ l)\ B\ k\ v\ r)$   
   else if  $cl\ rl = R$  then  $Node\ (Node\ (lsub\ l)\ B\ (key\ l)\ (val\ l)\ (lsub\ rl))\ R\ (key\ rl)\ (val\ rl)\ (Node\ (rsub\ rl)\ B\ k\ v\ r)$   
   else  $balanceR\ l\ k\ v\ r$   
   else  $balanceR\ l\ k\ v\ r$ )  
 <ML>

**lemma**  $balance\text{-}non\text{-}Leaf$  [resolve]:  $balance\ l\ k\ v\ r \neq Leaf$  <proof>

**lemma**  $balance\text{-}bdinv$  [forward-arg]:

$bd\text{-}inv\ l \Longrightarrow bd\text{-}inv\ r \Longrightarrow black\text{-}depth\ l = black\text{-}depth\ r \Longrightarrow bd\text{-}inv\ (balance\ l\ k\ v\ r)$   
 <proof>

**lemma**  $balance\text{-}bd$  [rewrite]:

$bd\text{-}inv\ l \Longrightarrow bd\text{-}inv\ r \Longrightarrow black\text{-}depth\ l = black\text{-}depth\ r \Longrightarrow$   
 $black\text{-}depth\ (balance\ l\ k\ v\ r) = black\text{-}depth\ l + 1$   
 <proof>

**lemma**  $balance\text{-}cl1$  [forward]:

$cl\text{-}inv'\ l \Longrightarrow cl\text{-}inv\ r \Longrightarrow cl\text{-}inv\ (balance\ l\ k\ v\ r)$  <proof>

**lemma**  $balance\text{-}cl2$  [forward]:

$cl\text{-}inv\ l \Longrightarrow cl\text{-}inv'\ r \Longrightarrow cl\text{-}inv\ (balance\ l\ k\ v\ r)$  <proof>

**lemma**  $balanceR\text{-}inorder\text{-}pairs$  [rewrite]:

$rbt\text{-}in\text{-}traverse\text{-}pairs\ (balanceR\ l\ k\ v\ r) = rbt\text{-}in\text{-}traverse\text{-}pairs\ l\ @\ (k, v)\ \#$   
 $rbt\text{-}in\text{-}traverse\text{-}pairs\ r$  <proof>

**lemma**  $balance\text{-}inorder\text{-}pairs$  [rewrite]:

$rbt\text{-}in\text{-}traverse\text{-}pairs\ (balance\ l\ k\ v\ r) = rbt\text{-}in\text{-}traverse\text{-}pairs\ l\ @\ (k, v)\ \# rbt\text{-}in\text{-}traverse\text{-}pairs\ r$   
 <proof>

<ML>

## 14.7 ins function

**fun** *ins* :: 'a::order ⇒ 'b ⇒ ('a, 'b) rbt ⇒ ('a, 'b) rbt **where**

*ins* *x v Leaf* = *Node Leaf R x v Leaf*

| *ins* *x v (Node l c y w r)* =

(if *c* = *B* then

(if *x* = *y* then *Node l B x v r*

else if *x* < *y* then *balance (ins x v l) y w r*

else *balance l y w (ins x v r)*)

else

(if *x* = *y* then *Node l R x v r*

else if *x* < *y* then *Node (ins x v l) R y w r*

else *Node l R y w (ins x v r)*)

⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *ins-non-Leaf* [resolve]: *ins x v t* ≠ *Leaf*

⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *cl-inv-ins* [forward]:

*cl-inv t* ⇒ *cl-inv' (ins x v t)*

⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *bd-inv-ins*:

*bd-inv t* ⇒ *bd-inv (ins x v t) ∧ black-depth t = black-depth (ins x v t)*

⟨proof⟩

⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *ins-inorder-pairs* [rewrite]:

*rbt-sorted t* ⇒ *rbt-in-traverse-pairs (ins x v t) = ordered-insert-pairs x v (rbt-in-traverse-pairs t)*

⟨proof⟩

## 14.8 Paint function

**fun** *paint* :: color ⇒ ('a, 'b) rbt ⇒ ('a, 'b) rbt **where**

*paint c Leaf* = *Leaf*

| *paint c (Node l c' x v r)* = *Node l c x v r*

⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *paint-cl-inv'* [forward]: *cl-inv' t* ⇒ *cl-inv' (paint c t)* ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *paint-bd-inv* [forward]: *bd-inv t* ⇒ *bd-inv (paint c t)* ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *paint-bd* [rewrite]:

*bd-inv t* ⇒ *t* ≠ *Leaf* ⇒ *cl t* = *B* ⇒ *black-depth (paint R t) = black-depth t - 1* ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *paint-in-traverse-pairs* [rewrite]:

*rbt-in-traverse-pairs (paint c t) = rbt-in-traverse-pairs t* ⟨proof⟩

## 14.9 Insert function

**definition** *rbt-insert* :: 'a::order ⇒ 'b ⇒ ('a, 'b) rbt ⇒ ('a, 'b) rbt **where** [*rewrite*]:  
*rbt-insert* x v t = *paint* B (*ins* x v t)

Correctness results for insertion.

**theorem** *insert-is-rbt* [*forward*]:  
*is-rbt* t ⇒ *is-rbt* (*rbt-insert* x v t) ⟨*proof*⟩

**theorem** *insert-sorted* [*forward*]:  
*rbt-sorted* t ⇒ *rbt-sorted* (*rbt-insert* x v t) ⟨*proof*⟩

**theorem** *insert-rbt-map* [*rewrite*]:  
*rbt-sorted* t ⇒ *rbt-map* (*rbt-insert* x v t) = (*rbt-map* t) {x → v} ⟨*proof*⟩

## 14.10 Search on sorted trees and its correctness

**fun** *rbt-search* :: ('a::ord, 'b) rbt ⇒ 'a ⇒ 'b option **where**  
*rbt-search* Leaf x = None  
| *rbt-search* (Node l c y w r) x =  
  (if x = y then Some w  
  else if x < y then *rbt-search* l x  
  else *rbt-search* r x)  
⟨ML⟩

Correctness of search

**theorem** *rbt-search-correct* [*rewrite*]:  
*rbt-sorted* t ⇒ *rbt-search* t x = (*rbt-map* t)⟨x⟩  
⟨*proof*⟩

## 14.11 balL and balR

**definition** *balL* :: ('a, 'b) rbt ⇒ 'a ⇒ 'b ⇒ ('a, 'b) rbt ⇒ ('a, 'b) rbt **where**  
[*rewrite*]:

*balL* l k v r = (let lr = *lsub* r in  
  if cl l = R then Node (Node (*lsub* l) B (key l) (val l) (*rsub* l)) R k v r  
  else if r = Leaf then Node l R k v r  
  else if cl r = B then *balance* l k v (Node (*lsub* r) R (key r) (val r) (*rsub* r))  
  else if lr = Leaf then Node l R k v r  
  else if cl lr = B then  
    Node (Node l B k v (*lsub* lr)) R (key lr) (val lr) (*balance* (*rsub* lr) (key r) (val  
r) (*paint* R (*rsub* r)))  
    else Node l R k v r)  
⟨ML⟩

**definition** *balR* :: ('a, 'b) rbt ⇒ 'a ⇒ 'b ⇒ ('a, 'b) rbt ⇒ ('a, 'b) rbt **where**  
[*rewrite*]:

*balR* l k v r = (let rl = *rsub* l in  
  if cl r = R then Node l R k v (Node (*lsub* r) B (key r) (val r) (*rsub* r))  
  else if l = Leaf then Node l R k v r

*else if*  $cl\ l = B$  *then*  $balance\ (Node\ (lsub\ l)\ R\ (key\ l)\ (val\ l)\ (rsub\ l))\ k\ v\ r$   
*else if*  $rl = Leaf$  *then*  $Node\ l\ R\ k\ v\ r$   
*else if*  $cl\ rl = B$  *then*  
 $Node\ (balance\ (paint\ R\ (lsub\ l))\ (key\ l)\ (val\ l)\ (lsub\ rl))\ R\ (key\ rl)\ (val\ rl)$   
 $(Node\ (rsub\ rl)\ B\ k\ v\ r)$   
*else*  $Node\ l\ R\ k\ v\ r)$   
 $\langle ML \rangle$

**lemma** *balL-bd* [*forward-arg*]:

$bd\text{-}inv\ l \implies bd\text{-}inv\ r \implies cl\ r = B \implies black\text{-}depth\ l + 1 = black\text{-}depth\ r \implies$   
 $bd\text{-}inv\ (balL\ l\ k\ v\ r) \wedge black\text{-}depth\ (balL\ l\ k\ v\ r) = black\text{-}depth\ l + 1$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *balL-bd'* [*forward-arg*]:

$bd\text{-}inv\ l \implies bd\text{-}inv\ r \implies cl\text{-}inv\ r \implies black\text{-}depth\ l + 1 = black\text{-}depth\ r \implies$   
 $bd\text{-}inv\ (balL\ l\ k\ v\ r) \wedge black\text{-}depth\ (balL\ l\ k\ v\ r) = black\text{-}depth\ l + 1$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *balL-cl* [*forward-arg*]:

$cl\text{-}inv'\ l \implies cl\text{-}inv\ r \implies cl\ r = B \implies cl\text{-}inv\ (balL\ l\ k\ v\ r)$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *balL-cl'* [*forward*]:

$cl\text{-}inv'\ l \implies cl\text{-}inv\ r \implies cl\text{-}inv'\ (balL\ l\ k\ v\ r)$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *balR-bd* [*forward-arg*]:

$bd\text{-}inv\ l \implies bd\text{-}inv\ r \implies cl\text{-}inv\ l \implies black\text{-}depth\ l = black\text{-}depth\ r + 1 \implies$   
 $bd\text{-}inv\ (balR\ l\ k\ v\ r) \wedge black\text{-}depth\ (balR\ l\ k\ v\ r) = black\text{-}depth\ l$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *balR-cl* [*forward-arg*]:

$cl\text{-}inv\ l \implies cl\text{-}inv'\ r \implies cl\ l = B \implies cl\text{-}inv\ (balR\ l\ k\ v\ r)$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *balR-cl'* [*forward*]:

$cl\text{-}inv\ l \implies cl\text{-}inv'\ r \implies cl\text{-}inv'\ (balR\ l\ k\ v\ r)$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *balL-in-traverse-pairs* [*rewrite*]:

$rbt\text{-}in\text{-}traverse\text{-}pairs\ (balL\ l\ k\ v\ r) = rbt\text{-}in\text{-}traverse\text{-}pairs\ l\ @\ (k,\ v)\ \# rbt\text{-}in\text{-}traverse\text{-}pairs$   
 $r$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *balR-in-traverse-pairs* [*rewrite*]:

$rbt\text{-}in\text{-}traverse\text{-}pairs\ (balR\ l\ k\ v\ r) = rbt\text{-}in\text{-}traverse\text{-}pairs\ l\ @\ (k,\ v)\ \# rbt\text{-}in\text{-}traverse\text{-}pairs$   
 $r$   $\langle proof \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

## 14.12 Combine

**fun** *combine* :: ('a, 'b) rbt  $\Rightarrow$  ('a, 'b) rbt  $\Rightarrow$  ('a, 'b) rbt **where**

*combine* Leaf  $t = t$

| *combine* t Leaf = t

| *combine* (Node l1 c1 k1 v1 r1) (Node l2 c2 k2 v2 r2) = (  
*if*  $c1 = R$  *then*

```

    if c2 = R then
      let tm = combine r1 l2 in
        if cl tm = R then
          Node (Node l1 R k1 v1 (lsub tm)) R (key tm) (val tm) (Node (rsub tm)
R k2 v2 r2)
        else
          Node l1 R k1 v1 (Node tm R k2 v2 r2)
      else
        Node l1 R k1 v1 (combine r1 (Node l2 c2 k2 v2 r2))
  else
    if c2 = B then
      let tm = combine r1 l2 in
        if cl tm = R then
          Node (Node l1 B k1 v1 (lsub tm)) R (key tm) (val tm) (Node (rsub tm) B
k2 v2 r2)
        else
          balL l1 k1 v1 (Node tm B k2 v2 r2)
    else
      Node (combine (Node l1 c1 k1 v1 r1) l2) R k2 v2 r2)
⟨ML⟩

```

**lemma** *combine-bd* [forward-arg]:

```

  bd-inv lt  $\implies$  bd-inv rt  $\implies$  black-depth lt = black-depth rt  $\implies$ 
  bd-inv (combine lt rt)  $\wedge$  black-depth (combine lt rt) = black-depth lt
⟨proof⟩

```

**lemma** *combine-cl*:

```

  cl-inv lt  $\implies$  cl-inv rt  $\implies$ 
  (cl lt = B  $\longrightarrow$  cl rt = B  $\longrightarrow$  cl-inv (combine lt rt))  $\wedge$  cl-inv' (combine lt rt)
⟨proof⟩
⟨ML⟩

```

**lemma** *combine-in-traverse-pairs* [rewrite]:

```

  rbt-in-traverse-pairs (combine lt rt) = rbt-in-traverse-pairs lt @ rbt-in-traverse-pairs
rt
⟨proof⟩

```

### 14.13 Deletion

**fun** *del* :: 'a::linorder  $\Rightarrow$  ('a, 'b) rbt  $\Rightarrow$  ('a, 'b) rbt **where**

```

  del x Leaf = Leaf
| del x (Node l - k v r) =
  (if x = k then combine l r
   else if x < k then
     if l = Leaf then Node Leaf R k v r
     else if cl l = B then balL (del x l) k v r
     else Node (del x l) R k v r
   else
     if r = Leaf then Node l R k v Leaf

```

$$\text{else if } cl\ r = B \text{ then } balR\ l\ k\ v\ (del\ x\ r)$$

$$\text{else } Node\ l\ R\ k\ v\ (del\ x\ r))$$
 <ML>

**lemma** *del-bd* [forward-arg]:  

$$bd\text{-inv}\ t \implies cl\text{-inv}\ t \implies bd\text{-inv}\ (del\ x\ t) \wedge$$

$$\text{if } cl\ t = R \text{ then } black\text{-depth}\ (del\ x\ t) = black\text{-depth}\ t$$

$$\text{else } black\text{-depth}\ (del\ x\ t) = black\text{-depth}\ t - 1$$
 <proof>

**lemma** *del-cl*:  

$$cl\text{-inv}\ t \implies \text{if } cl\ t = R \text{ then } cl\text{-inv}\ (del\ x\ t) \text{ else } cl\text{-inv}'\ (del\ x\ t)$$
 <proof>  
 <ML>

**lemma** *del-in-traverse-pairs* [rewrite]:  

$$rbt\text{-sorted}\ t \implies rbt\text{-in-traverse-pairs}\ (del\ x\ t) = \text{remove-elt-pairs}\ x\ (rbt\text{-in-traverse-pairs}\ t)$$
 <proof>

**definition** *delete* :: 'a::linorder  $\Rightarrow$  ('a, 'b) rbt  $\Rightarrow$  ('a, 'b) rbt **where** [rewrite]:  

$$\text{delete}\ x\ t = \text{paint}\ B\ (del\ x\ t)$$

Correctness results for deletion.

**theorem** *delete-is-rbt* [forward]:  

$$is\text{-rbt}\ t \implies is\text{-rbt}\ (\text{delete}\ x\ t)$$
 <proof>

**theorem** *delete-sorted* [forward]:  

$$rbt\text{-sorted}\ t \implies rbt\text{-sorted}\ (\text{delete}\ x\ t)$$
 <proof>

**theorem** *delete-rbt-map* [rewrite]:  

$$rbt\text{-sorted}\ t \implies rbt\text{-map}\ (\text{delete}\ x\ t) = \text{delete-map}\ x\ (rbt\text{-map}\ t)$$
 <proof>

<ML>

end

## 15 Rectangle intersection

**theory** *Rect-Intersect*  
**imports** *Interval-Tree*  
**begin**

Functional version of algorithm for detecting rectangle intersection. See [2, Exercise 14.3-7] for a reference.

### 15.1 Definition of rectangles

**datatype** 'a *rectangle* = *Rectangle* (*xint*: 'a *interval*) (*yint*: 'a *interval*)



⟨ML⟩

**definition** *is-rect* :: ('a::linorder) rectangle ⇒ bool **where** [rewrite]:  
*is-rect* rect ⟷ *is-interval* (xint rect) ∧ *is-interval* (yint rect)

**definition** *is-rect-list* :: ('a::linorder) rectangle list ⇒ bool **where** [rewrite]:  
*is-rect-list* rects ⟷ (∀ i < length rects. *is-rect* (rects ! i))

**lemma** *is-rect-listD*: *is-rect-list* rects ⇒ i < length rects ⇒ *is-rect* (rects ! i)  
⟨proof⟩  
⟨ML⟩

**definition** *is-rect-overlap* :: ('a::linorder) rectangle ⇒ ('a::linorder) rectangle ⇒ bool **where** [rewrite]:  
*is-rect-overlap* A B ⟷ (*is-overlap* (xint A) (xint B) ∧ *is-overlap* (yint A) (yint B))

**definition** *has-rect-overlap* :: ('a::linorder) rectangle list ⇒ bool **where** [rewrite]:  
*has-rect-overlap* As ⟷ (∃ i < length As. ∃ j < length As. i ≠ j ∧ *is-rect-overlap* (As ! i) (As ! j))

## 15.2 INS / DEL operations

**datatype** 'a operation =  
  INS (pos: 'a) (op-idx: nat) (op-int: 'a interval)  
| DEL (pos: 'a) (op-idx: nat) (op-int: 'a interval)  
⟨ML⟩

**instantiation** operation :: (linorder) linorder **begin**

**definition** *less*: (a < b) = (if pos a ≠ pos b then pos a < pos b else  
  if *is-INS* a ≠ *is-INS* b then *is-INS* a ∧ ¬*is-INS* b  
  else if op-idx a ≠ op-idx b then op-idx a < op-idx b else  
  op-int a < op-int b)

**definition** *less-eq*: (a ≤ b) = (if pos a ≠ pos b then pos a < pos b else  
  if *is-INS* a ≠ *is-INS* b then *is-INS* a ∧ ¬*is-INS* b  
  else if op-idx a ≠ op-idx b then op-idx a < op-idx b else  
  op-int a ≤ op-int b)

**instance** ⟨proof⟩ **end**

⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *operation-leD* [forward]:  
(a::('a::linorder operation)) ≤ b ⇒ pos a ≤ pos b ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *operation-lessI* [backward]:  
p1 ≤ p2 ⇒ INS p1 n1 i1 < DEL p2 n2 i2  
⟨proof⟩

⟨ML⟩

### 15.3 Set of operations corresponding to a list of rectangles

**fun** *ins-op* :: 'a rectangle list ⇒ nat ⇒ ('a::linorder) operation **where**  
  *ins-op* *rects* *i* = *INS* (*low* (*yint* (*rects* ! *i*))) *i* (*xint* (*rects* ! *i*))  
⟨ML⟩

**fun** *del-op* :: 'a rectangle list ⇒ nat ⇒ ('a::linorder) operation **where**  
  *del-op* *rects* *i* = *DEL* (*high* (*yint* (*rects* ! *i*))) *i* (*xint* (*rects* ! *i*))  
⟨ML⟩

**definition** *ins-ops* :: 'a rectangle list ⇒ ('a::linorder) operation list **where** [*rewrite*]:  
  *ins-ops* *rects* = *list* ( $\lambda i.$  *ins-op* *rects* *i*) (*length* *rects*)

**definition** *del-ops* :: 'a rectangle list ⇒ ('a::linorder) operation list **where** [*rewrite*]:  
  *del-ops* *rects* = *list* ( $\lambda i.$  *del-op* *rects* *i*) (*length* *rects*)

**lemma** *ins-ops-distinct* [*forward*]: *distinct* (*ins-ops* *rects*)  
⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *del-ops-distinct* [*forward*]: *distinct* (*del-ops* *rects*)  
⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *set-ins-ops* [*rewrite*]:  
   $oper \in set\ (ins-ops\ rects) \iff op-idx\ oper < length\ rects \wedge oper = ins-op\ rects\ (op-idx\ oper)$   
⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *set-del-ops* [*rewrite*]:  
   $oper \in set\ (del-ops\ rects) \iff op-idx\ oper < length\ rects \wedge oper = del-op\ rects\ (op-idx\ oper)$   
⟨*proof*⟩

**definition** *all-ops* :: 'a rectangle list ⇒ ('a::linorder) operation list **where** [*rewrite*]:  
  *all-ops* *rects* = *sort* (*ins-ops* *rects* @ *del-ops* *rects*)

**lemma** *all-ops-distinct* [*forward*]: *distinct* (*all-ops* *rects*)  
⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *set-all-ops-idx* [*forward*]:  
   $oper \in set\ (all-ops\ rects) \implies op-idx\ oper < length\ rects$  ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *set-all-ops-ins* [*forward*]:  
   $INS\ p\ n\ i \in set\ (all-ops\ rects) \implies INS\ p\ n\ i = ins-op\ rects\ n$  ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *set-all-ops-del* [*forward*]:  
   $DEL\ p\ n\ i \in set\ (all-ops\ rects) \implies DEL\ p\ n\ i = del-op\ rects\ n$  ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *ins-in-set-all-ops*:

$i < \text{length } \text{rects} \implies \text{ins-op } \text{rects } i \in \text{set } (\text{all-ops } \text{rects})$   $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$   
 $\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

**lemma** *del-in-set-all-ops*:

$i < \text{length } \text{rects} \implies \text{del-op } \text{rects } i \in \text{set } (\text{all-ops } \text{rects})$   $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$   
 $\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

**lemma** *all-ops-sorted [forward]*:  $\text{sorted } (\text{all-ops } \text{rects})$   $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *all-ops-nonempty [backward]*:  $\text{rects} \neq [] \implies \text{all-ops } \text{rects} \neq []$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

## 15.4 Applying a set of operations

**definition** *apply-ops-k* ::  $('a::\text{linorder})$  *rectangle list*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat set* **where**  
 $\langle \text{rewrite} \rangle$ :

$\text{apply-ops-k } \text{rects } k = (\text{let } \text{ops} = \text{all-ops } \text{rects } \text{in}$   
 $\{i. i < \text{length } \text{rects} \wedge (\exists j < k. \text{ins-op } \text{rects } i = \text{ops } ! j) \wedge \neg(\exists j < k. \text{del-op } \text{rects}$   
 $i = \text{ops } ! j)\})$   
 $\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

**lemma** *apply-ops-set-mem [rewrite]*:

$\text{ops} = \text{all-ops } \text{rects} \implies$   
 $i \in \text{apply-ops-k } \text{rects } k \iff (i < \text{length } \text{rects} \wedge (\exists j < k. \text{ins-op } \text{rects } i = \text{ops } ! j)$   
 $\wedge \neg(\exists j < k. \text{del-op } \text{rects } i = \text{ops } ! j))$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$   
 $\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

**definition** *xints-of* ::  $'a$  *rectangle list*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat set*  $\Rightarrow$   $(('a::\text{linorder})$  *idx-interval*) *set*  
**where**  $\langle \text{rewrite} \rangle$ :

$\text{xints-of } \text{rect } \text{is} = (\lambda i. \text{IdxInterval } (\text{xint } (\text{rect } ! i)) i) ' \text{is}$

**lemma** *xints-of-mem [rewrite]*:

$\text{IdxInterval } \text{it } i \in \text{xints-of } \text{rect } \text{is} \iff (i \in \text{is} \wedge \text{xint } (\text{rect } ! i) = \text{it})$   $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *xints-diff [rewrite]*:

$\text{xints-of } \text{rects } (A - B) = \text{xints-of } \text{rects } A - \text{xints-of } \text{rects } B$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**definition** *has-overlap-at-k* ::  $('a::\text{linorder})$  *rectangle list*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* **where**  
 $\langle \text{rewrite} \rangle$ :

$\text{has-overlap-at-k } \text{rects } k \iff ($   
 $\text{let } S = \text{apply-ops-k } \text{rects } k; \text{ops} = \text{all-ops } \text{rects } \text{in}$   
 $\text{is-INS } (\text{ops } ! k) \wedge \text{has-overlap } (\text{xints-of } \text{rects } S) (\text{op-int } (\text{ops } ! k)))$   
 $\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

**lemma** *has-overlap-at-k-equiv* [forward]:  
 $is-rect-list\ rects \implies ops = all-ops\ rects \implies k < length\ ops \implies$   
 $has-overlap-at-k\ rects\ k \implies has-rect-overlap\ rects$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *has-overlap-at-k-equiv2* [resolve]:  
 $is-rect-list\ rects \implies ops = all-ops\ rects \implies has-rect-overlap\ rects \implies$   
 $\exists k < length\ ops. has-overlap-at-k\ rects\ k$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**definition** *has-overlap-lst* :: ('a::linorder) rectangle list  $\Rightarrow$  bool **where** [rewrite]:  
 $has-overlap-lst\ rects = (let\ ops = all-ops\ rects\ in\ (\exists k < length\ ops. has-overlap-at-k\ rects\ k))$

**lemma** *has-overlap-equiv* [rewrite]:  
 $is-rect-list\ rects \implies has-overlap-lst\ rects \longleftrightarrow has-rect-overlap\ rects$  ⟨proof⟩

## 15.5 Implementation of apply\_ops\_k

**lemma** *apply-ops-k-next1* [rewrite]:  
 $is-rect-list\ rects \implies ops = all-ops\ rects \implies n < length\ ops \implies is-INS\ (ops\ !\ n)$   
 $\implies$   
 $apply-ops-k\ rects\ (n + 1) = apply-ops-k\ rects\ n \cup \{op-idx\ (ops\ !\ n)\}$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *apply-ops-k-next2* [rewrite]:  
 $is-rect-list\ rects \implies ops = all-ops\ rects \implies n < length\ ops \implies \neg is-INS\ (ops\ !\ n)$   
 $\implies$   
 $apply-ops-k\ rects\ (n + 1) = apply-ops-k\ rects\ n - \{op-idx\ (ops\ !\ n)\}$  ⟨proof⟩

**definition** *apply-ops-k-next* :: ('a::linorder) rectangle list  $\Rightarrow$  'a idx-interval set  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  'a idx-interval set **where**  
 $apply-ops-k-next\ rects\ S\ k = (let\ ops = all-ops\ rects\ in$   
 (case ops ! k of  
    $INS\ p\ n\ i \Rightarrow S \cup \{IdxInterval\ i\ n\}$   
    $| DEL\ p\ n\ i \Rightarrow S - \{IdxInterval\ i\ n\}))$   
 ⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *apply-ops-k-next-is-correct* [rewrite]:  
 $is-rect-list\ rects \implies ops = all-ops\ rects \implies n < length\ ops \implies$   
 $S = xints-of\ rects\ (apply-ops-k\ rects\ n) \implies$   
 $xints-of\ rects\ (apply-ops-k\ rects\ (n + 1)) = apply-ops-k-next\ rects\ S\ n$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**function** *rect-inter* :: nat rectangle list  $\Rightarrow$  nat idx-interval set  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  bool **where**  
 $rect-inter\ rects\ S\ k = (let\ ops = all-ops\ rects\ in$   
 if  $k \geq length\ ops$  then False  
 else if  $is-INS\ (ops\ !\ k)$  then

```

    if has-overlap S (op-int (ops ! k)) then True
    else if k = length ops - 1 then False
    else rect-inter rects (apply-ops-k-next rects S k) (k + 1)
    else if k = length ops - 1 then False
    else rect-inter rects (apply-ops-k-next rects S k) (k + 1)
  <proof>
termination <proof>

```

**lemma** *rect-inter-correct-ind* [rewrite]:  
 $is-rect-list\ rects \implies ops = all-ops\ rects \implies n < length\ ops \implies$   
 $rect-inter\ rects\ (xints-of\ rects\ (apply-ops-k\ rects\ n))\ n \iff$   
 $(\exists k < length\ ops.\ k \geq n \wedge has-overlap-at-k\ rects\ k)$   
 <proof>

Correctness of functional algorithm.

**theorem** *rect-inter-correct* [rewrite]:  
 $is-rect-list\ rects \implies rect-inter\ rects\ \{\}\ 0 \iff has-rect-overlap\ rects$   
 <proof>

**end**

**theory** *SepLogic-Base*  
**imports** *Auto2-HOL.Auto2-Main*  
**begin**

General auto2 setup for separation logic. The automation defined here can be instantiated for different variants of separation logic.

<ML>

**end**

## 16 Separation logic

**theory** *SepAuto*  
**imports** *SepLogic-Base HOL-Imperative-HOL.Imperative-HOL*  
**begin**

Separation logic for Imperative\_HOL, and setup of auto2. The development of separation logic here follows [5] by Lammich and Meis.

### 16.1 Partial Heaps

**datatype** *pheap* = *pHeap* (*heapOf*: *heap*) (*addrOf*: *addr set*)  
 <ML>

**fun** *in-range* :: (*heap* × *addr set*) ⇒ *bool* **where**  
 $in-range\ (h, as) \iff (\forall a \in as.\ a < lim\ h)$

$\langle ML \rangle$

Two heaps agree on a set of addresses.

**definition**  $relH :: addr\ set \Rightarrow heap \Rightarrow heap \Rightarrow bool$  **where** [rewrite]:  
 $relH\ as\ h\ h' = (in-range\ (h,\ as) \wedge in-range\ (h',\ as) \wedge$   
 $(\forall t.\ \forall a \in as.\ refs\ h\ t\ a = refs\ h'\ t\ a \wedge arrays\ h\ t\ a = arrays\ h'\ t\ a))$

**lemma**  $relH-D$  [forward]:  
 $relH\ as\ h\ h' \Longrightarrow in-range\ (h,\ as) \wedge in-range\ (h',\ as)$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma**  $relH-D2$  [rewrite]:  
 $relH\ as\ h\ h' \Longrightarrow a \in as \Longrightarrow refs\ h\ t\ a = refs\ h'\ t\ a$   
 $relH\ as\ h\ h' \Longrightarrow a \in as \Longrightarrow arrays\ h\ t\ a = arrays\ h'\ t\ a$   $\langle proof \rangle$   
 $\langle ML \rangle$

**lemma**  $relH-dist-union$  [forward]:  
 $relH\ (as \cup as')\ h\ h' \Longrightarrow relH\ as\ h\ h' \wedge relH\ as'\ h\ h'$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma**  $relH-ref$  [rewrite]:  
 $relH\ as\ h\ h' \Longrightarrow addr-of-ref\ r \in as \Longrightarrow Ref.get\ h\ r = Ref.get\ h'\ r$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma**  $relH-array$  [rewrite]:  
 $relH\ as\ h\ h' \Longrightarrow addr-of-array\ r \in as \Longrightarrow Array.get\ h\ r = Array.get\ h'\ r$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma**  $relH-set-ref$  [resolve]:  
 $relH\ \{a.\ a < lim\ h \wedge a \notin \{addr-of-ref\ r\}\}\ h\ (Ref.set\ r\ x\ h)$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma**  $relH-set-array$  [resolve]:  
 $relH\ \{a.\ a < lim\ h \wedge a \notin \{addr-of-array\ r\}\}\ h\ (Array.set\ r\ x\ h)$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

## 16.2 Assertions

**datatype**  $assn\ raw = Assn\ (assn-fn: pheap \Rightarrow bool)$

**fun**  $aseval :: assn\ raw \Rightarrow pheap \Rightarrow bool$  **where**  
 $aseval\ (Assn\ f)\ h = f\ h$   
 $\langle ML \rangle$

**definition**  $proper :: assn\ raw \Rightarrow bool$  **where** [rewrite]:  
 $proper\ P =$   
 $(\forall h\ as.\ aseval\ P\ (pHeap\ h\ as) \longrightarrow in-range\ (h,\ as)) \wedge$   
 $(\forall h\ h'\ as.\ aseval\ P\ (pHeap\ h\ as) \longrightarrow relH\ as\ h\ h' \longrightarrow in-range\ (h',\ as) \longrightarrow$   
 $aseval\ P\ (pHeap\ h'\ as))$

**fun**  $in-range-assn :: pheap \Rightarrow bool$  **where**

*in-range-assn* (*pHeap h as*)  $\longleftrightarrow (\forall a \in as. a < \text{lim } h)$   
 <ML>

**typedef** *assn* = *Collect proper*  
 <proof>

<ML>

**lemma** *Abs-assn-inverse'* [*rewrite*]: *proper y*  $\implies \text{Rep-assn } (\text{Abs-assn } y) = y$   
 <proof>

**lemma** *proper-Rep-assn* [*forward*]: *proper (Rep-assn P)* <proof>

**definition** *models* :: *pheap*  $\Rightarrow$  *assn*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* (**infix**  $\models$  50) **where** [*rewrite-bidir*]:  
*h*  $\models P \longleftrightarrow \text{aseval } (\text{Rep-assn } P) h$

**lemma** *models-in-range* [*resolve*]: *pHeap h as*  $\models P \implies \text{in-range } (h, as)$  <proof>

**lemma** *mod-relH* [*forward*]: *relH as h h'*  $\implies \text{pHeap } h \text{ as} \models P \implies \text{pHeap } h' \text{ as} \models P$  <proof>

**instantiation** *assn* :: *one* **begin**

**definition** *one-assn* :: *assn* **where** [*rewrite*]:

$1 \equiv \text{Abs-assn } (\text{Assn } (\lambda h. \text{addrOf } h = \{\}))$

**instance** <proof> **end**

**abbreviation** *one-assn* :: *assn* (*emp*) **where** *one-assn*  $\equiv 1$

**lemma** *one-assn-rule* [*rewrite*]: *h*  $\models \text{emp} \longleftrightarrow \text{addrOf } h = \{\}$  <proof>  
 <ML>

**instantiation** *assn* :: *times* **begin**

**definition** *times-assn* **where** [*rewrite*]:

$P * Q = \text{Abs-assn } (\text{Assn } ($

$\lambda h. (\exists as1 as2. \text{addrOf } h = as1 \cup as2 \wedge as1 \cap as2 = \{\} \wedge$

$\text{aseval } (\text{Rep-assn } P) (\text{pHeap } (\text{heapOf } h) as1) \wedge \text{aseval } (\text{Rep-assn}$

$Q) (\text{pHeap } (\text{heapOf } h) as2)))$

**instance** <proof> **end**

**lemma** *mod-star-conv* [*rewrite*]:

$\text{pHeap } h \text{ as} \models A * B \longleftrightarrow (\exists as1 as2. as = as1 \cup as2 \wedge as1 \cap as2 = \{\} \wedge \text{pHeap } h \text{ as1} \models A \wedge \text{pHeap } h \text{ as2} \models B)$  <proof>

<ML>

**lemma** *aseval-ext* [*backward*]:  $\forall h. \text{aseval } P h = \text{aseval } P' h \implies P = P'$   
 <proof>

**lemma** *assn-ext*:  $\forall h as. \text{pHeap } h \text{ as} \models P \longleftrightarrow \text{pHeap } h \text{ as} \models Q \implies P = Q$   
 <proof>

$\langle ML \rangle$

**lemma** *assn-one-left*:  $1 * P = (P::assn)$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *assn-times-comm*:  $P * Q = Q * (P::assn)$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *assn-times-assoc*:  $(P * Q) * R = P * (Q * (R::assn))$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**instantiation** *assn* :: *comm-monoid-mult* **begin**  
  **instance**  $\langle proof \rangle$   
**end**

### 16.2.1 Existential Quantification

**definition** *ex-assn* ::  $'a \Rightarrow assn \Rightarrow assn$  (**binder**  $\exists_A$  11) **where**  $[rewrite]$ :  
   $(\exists_A x. P x) = Abs-assn (Assn (\lambda h. \exists x. h \models P x))$

**lemma** *mod-ex-dist*  $[rewrite]$ :  $(h \models (\exists_A x. P x)) \longleftrightarrow (\exists x. h \models P x)$   $\langle proof \rangle$   
 $\langle ML \rangle$

**lemma** *ex-distrib-star*:  $(\exists_A x. P x * Q) = (\exists_A x. P x) * Q$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

### 16.2.2 Pointers

**definition** *sng-r-assn* ::  $'a::heap\ ref \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow assn$  (**infix**  $\mapsto_r$  82) **where**  $[rewrite]$ :  
   $r \mapsto_r x = Abs-assn (Assn (\lambda h. Ref.get (heapOf h) r = x \wedge addrOf h = \{addr-of-ref r\} \wedge addr-of-ref r < lim (heapOf h)))$

**lemma** *sng-r-assn-rule*  $[rewrite]$ :  
   $pHeap h as \models r \mapsto_r x \longleftrightarrow (Ref.get h r = x \wedge as = \{addr-of-ref r\} \wedge addr-of-ref r < lim h)$   $\langle proof \rangle$   
 $\langle ML \rangle$

**definition** *sng-a-assn* ::  $'a::heap\ array \Rightarrow 'a\ list \Rightarrow assn$  (**infix**  $\mapsto_a$  82) **where**  $[rewrite]$ :  
   $r \mapsto_a x = Abs-assn (Assn (\lambda h. Array.get (heapOf h) r = x \wedge addrOf h = \{addr-of-array r\} \wedge addr-of-array r < lim (heapOf h)))$

**lemma** *sng-a-assn-rule*  $[rewrite]$ :  
   $pHeap h as \models r \mapsto_a x \longleftrightarrow (Array.get h r = x \wedge as = \{addr-of-array r\} \wedge addr-of-array r < lim h)$   $\langle proof \rangle$   
 $\langle ML \rangle$



### 16.2.3 Pure Assertions

**definition** *pure-assn* :: *bool*  $\Rightarrow$  *assn* ( $\uparrow$ ) **where** [*rewrite*]:

$$\uparrow b = \text{Abs-assn } (\text{Assn } (\lambda h. \text{addrOf } h = \{\} \wedge b))$$

**lemma** *pure-assn-rule* [*rewrite*]:  $h \models \uparrow b \iff (\text{addrOf } h = \{\} \wedge b)$  *<proof>*  
*<ML>*

**definition** *top-assn* :: *assn* (*true*) **where** [*rewrite*]:

$$\text{top-assn} = \text{Abs-assn } (\text{Assn } \text{in-range-assn})$$

**lemma** *top-assn-rule* [*rewrite*]:  $p\text{Heap } h \text{ as} \models \text{true} \iff \text{in-range } (h, \text{as})$  *<proof>*  
*<ML>*

### 16.2.4 Properties of assertions

**abbreviation** *bot-assn* :: *assn* (*false*) **where**  $\text{bot-assn} \equiv \uparrow \text{False}$

**lemma** *top-assn-reduce*:  $\text{true} * \text{true} = \text{true}$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *mod-pure-star-dist* [*rewrite*]:

$$h \models P * \uparrow b \iff (h \models P \wedge b)$$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *pure-conj*:  $\uparrow(P \wedge Q) = \uparrow P * \uparrow Q$  *<proof>*

### 16.2.5 Entailment and its properties

**definition** *entails* :: *assn*  $\Rightarrow$  *assn*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* (**infix**  $\Longrightarrow_A$  10) **where** [*rewrite*]:

$$(P \Longrightarrow_A Q) \iff (\forall h. h \models P \longrightarrow h \models Q)$$

**lemma** *entails-triv*:  $A \Longrightarrow_A A$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *entails-true*:  $A \Longrightarrow_A \text{true}$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *entails-frame* [*backward*]:  $P \Longrightarrow_A Q \implies P * R \Longrightarrow_A Q * R$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *entails-frame'*:  $\neg (A * F \Longrightarrow_A Q) \implies A \Longrightarrow_A B \implies \neg (B * F \Longrightarrow_A Q)$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *entails-frame''*:  $\neg (P \Longrightarrow_A B * F) \implies A \Longrightarrow_A B \implies \neg (P \Longrightarrow_A A * F)$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *entails-equiv-forward*:  $P = Q \implies P \Longrightarrow_A Q$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *entails-equiv-backward*:  $P = Q \implies Q \Longrightarrow_A P$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *entailsD* [*forward*]:  $P \Longrightarrow_A Q \implies h \models P \implies h \models Q$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *entails-trans2*:  $A \Longrightarrow_A D * B \implies B \Longrightarrow_A C \implies A \Longrightarrow_A D * C$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *entails-pure'*:  $\neg(\uparrow b \Longrightarrow_A Q) \iff (\neg(\text{emp} \Longrightarrow_A Q) \wedge b)$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *entails-pure*:  $\neg(P * \uparrow b \Longrightarrow_A Q) \iff (\neg(P \Longrightarrow_A Q) \wedge b)$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *entails-ex*:  $\neg((\exists_A x. P x) \Longrightarrow_A Q) \iff (\exists x. \neg(P x \Longrightarrow_A Q))$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *entails-ex-post*:  $\neg(P \Longrightarrow_A (\exists_A x. Q x)) \implies \forall x. \neg(P \Longrightarrow_A Q x)$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *entails-pure-post*:  $\neg(P \Longrightarrow_A Q * \uparrow b) \implies P \Longrightarrow_A Q \implies \neg b$  *<proof>*

$\langle ML \rangle$

### 16.3 Definition of the run predicate

**inductive**  $run :: 'a Heap \Rightarrow heap\ option \Rightarrow heap\ option \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow bool$  **where**

$run\ c\ None\ None\ r$   
|  $execute\ c\ h = None \Longrightarrow run\ c\ (Some\ h)\ None\ r$   
|  $execute\ c\ h = Some\ (r, h') \Longrightarrow run\ c\ (Some\ h)\ (Some\ h')\ r$   
 $\langle ML \rangle$

**lemma**  $run-complete$   $[resolve]$ :

$\exists \sigma' r. run\ c\ \sigma\ \sigma' (r::'a)$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma**  $run-to-execute$   $[forward]$ :

$run\ c\ (Some\ h)\ \sigma' r \Longrightarrow$  if  $\sigma' = None$  then  $execute\ c\ h = None$  else  $execute\ c\ h = Some\ (r, the\ \sigma')$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

**lemma**  $runE$   $[forward]$ :

$run\ f\ (Some\ h)\ (Some\ h')\ r' \Longrightarrow run\ (f \ggg g)\ (Some\ h)\ \sigma\ r \Longrightarrow run\ (g\ r')$   
 $(Some\ h')\ \sigma\ r$   $\langle proof \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

### 16.4 Definition of hoare triple, and the frame rule.

**definition**  $new-addrs :: heap \Rightarrow addr\ set \Rightarrow heap \Rightarrow addr\ set$  **where**  $[rewrite]$ :

$new-addrs\ h\ as\ h' = as \cup \{a. lim\ h \leq a \wedge a < lim\ h'\}$

**definition**  $hoare-triple :: assn \Rightarrow 'a Heap \Rightarrow ('a \Rightarrow assn) \Rightarrow bool$   $(\langle - \rangle / - / \langle - \rangle)$

**where**  $[rewrite]$ :

$\langle P \rangle c \langle Q \rangle \iff (\forall h\ as\ \sigma\ r. pHeap\ h\ as \models P \longrightarrow run\ c\ (Some\ h)\ \sigma\ r \longrightarrow$   
 $(\sigma \neq None \wedge pHeap\ (the\ \sigma)\ (new-addrs\ h\ as\ (the\ \sigma))) \models Q\ r \wedge relH\ \{a . a <$   
 $lim\ h \wedge a \notin as\} h\ (the\ \sigma) \wedge$   
 $lim\ h \leq lim\ (the\ \sigma))$

**lemma**  $hoare-tripleD$   $[forward]$ :

$\langle P \rangle c \langle Q \rangle \implies run\ c\ (Some\ h)\ \sigma\ r \implies \forall as. pHeap\ h\ as \models P \longrightarrow$   
 $(\sigma \neq None \wedge pHeap\ (the\ \sigma)\ (new-addrs\ h\ as\ (the\ \sigma))) \models Q\ r \wedge relH\ \{a . a <$   
 $lim\ h \wedge a \notin as\} h\ (the\ \sigma) \wedge$   
 $lim\ h \leq lim\ (the\ \sigma)$

$\langle proof \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

**abbreviation**  $hoare-triple' :: assn \Rightarrow 'r Heap \Rightarrow ('r \Rightarrow assn) \Rightarrow bool$   $(\langle - \rangle - \langle - \rangle_t)$

**where**

$\langle P \rangle c \langle Q \rangle_t \equiv \langle P \rangle c \langle \lambda r. Q\ r * true \rangle$

**theorem** *frame-rule* [*backward*]:

$$\langle P \rangle c \langle Q \rangle \implies \langle P * R \rangle c \langle \lambda x. Q x * R \rangle$$

*<proof>*

This is the last use of the definition of separating conjunction.

*<ML>*

**theorem** *bind-rule*:

$$\langle P \rangle f \langle Q \rangle \implies \forall x. \langle Q x \rangle g x \langle R \rangle \implies \langle P \rangle f \ggg g \langle R \rangle$$

*<proof>*

Actual statement used:

**lemma** *bind-rule'*:

$$\langle P \rangle f \langle Q \rangle \implies \neg \langle P \rangle f \ggg g \langle R \rangle \implies \exists x. \neg \langle Q x \rangle g x \langle R \rangle \text{ } \langle \textit{proof} \rangle$$

**lemma** *pre-rule'*:

$$\neg \langle P * R \rangle f \langle Q \rangle \implies P \implies_A P' \implies \neg \langle P' * R \rangle f \langle Q \rangle$$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *pre-rule''*:

$$\langle P \rangle f \langle Q \rangle \implies P' \implies_A P * R \implies \langle P' \rangle f \langle \lambda x. Q x * R \rangle$$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *pre-ex-rule*:

$$\neg \langle \exists_{Ax}. P x \rangle f \langle Q \rangle \longleftrightarrow (\exists x. \neg \langle P x \rangle f \langle Q \rangle) \text{ } \langle \textit{proof} \rangle$$

**lemma** *pre-pure-rule*:

$$\neg \langle P * \uparrow b \rangle f \langle Q \rangle \longleftrightarrow \neg \langle P \rangle f \langle Q \rangle \wedge b \text{ } \langle \textit{proof} \rangle$$

**lemma** *pre-pure-rule'*:

$$\neg \langle \uparrow b \rangle f \langle Q \rangle \longleftrightarrow \neg \langle \textit{emp} \rangle f \langle Q \rangle \wedge b \text{ } \langle \textit{proof} \rangle$$

**lemma** *post-rule*:

$$\langle P \rangle f \langle Q \rangle \implies \forall x. Q x \implies_A R x \implies \langle P \rangle f \langle R \rangle \text{ } \langle \textit{proof} \rangle$$

*<ML>*

Actual statement used:

**lemma** *post-rule'*:

$$\langle P \rangle f \langle Q \rangle \implies \neg \langle P \rangle f \langle R \rangle \implies \exists x. \neg (Q x \implies_A R x) \text{ } \langle \textit{proof} \rangle$$

**lemma** *norm-pre-pure-iff*:  $\langle P * \uparrow b \rangle c \langle Q \rangle \longleftrightarrow (b \longrightarrow \langle P \rangle c \langle Q \rangle) \text{ } \langle \textit{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *norm-pre-pure-iff2*:  $\langle \uparrow b \rangle c \langle Q \rangle \longleftrightarrow (b \longrightarrow \langle \textit{emp} \rangle c \langle Q \rangle) \text{ } \langle \textit{proof} \rangle$

## 16.5 Hoare triples for atomic commands

First, those that do not modify the heap.

*<ML>*

**lemma** *assert-rule*:

$\langle \uparrow(R\ x) \rangle \text{ assert } R\ x \langle \lambda r. \uparrow(r = x) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *execute-return'* [*rewrite*]:  $\text{execute } (\text{return } x)\ h = \text{Some } (x, h) \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *return-rule*:

$\langle \text{emp} \rangle \text{ return } x \langle \lambda r. \uparrow(r = x) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

**lemma** *nth-rule*:

$\langle a \mapsto_a xs * \uparrow(i < \text{length } xs) \rangle \text{ Array.nth } a\ i \langle \lambda r. a \mapsto_a xs * \uparrow(r = xs\ !\ i) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

**lemma** *length-rule*:

$\langle a \mapsto_a xs \rangle \text{ Array.len } a \langle \lambda r. a \mapsto_a xs * \uparrow(r = \text{length } xs) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

**lemma** *lookup-rule*:

$\langle p \mapsto_r x \rangle !p \langle \lambda r. p \mapsto_r x * \uparrow(r = x) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

**lemma** *freeze-rule*:

$\langle a \mapsto_a xs \rangle \text{ Array.freeze } a \langle \lambda r. a \mapsto_a xs * \uparrow(r = xs) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

Next, the update rules.

$\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

**lemma** *Array-lim-set* [*rewrite*]:  $\text{lim } (\text{Array.set } p\ xs\ h) = \text{lim } h \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

**lemma** *upd-rule*:

$\langle a \mapsto_a xs * \uparrow(i < \text{length } xs) \rangle \text{ Array.upd } i\ x\ a \langle \lambda r. a \mapsto_a \text{list-update } xs\ i\ x * \uparrow(r = a) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

**lemma** *update-rule*:

$\langle p \mapsto_r y \rangle p := x \langle \lambda r. p \mapsto_r x \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

Finally, the allocation rules.

**lemma** *lim-set-gen* [*rewrite*]:  $\text{lim } (h(\text{lim} := l)) = l \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *Array-alloc-def'* [*rewrite*]:

$\text{Array.alloc } xs\ h = (\text{let } l = \text{lim } h; r = \text{Array } l \text{ in } (r, (\text{Array.set } r\ xs\ (h(\text{lim} := l + 1)))))) \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

**lemma** *refs-on-Array-set* [*rewrite*]:  $\text{refs } (\text{Array.set } p\ xs\ h)\ t\ i = \text{refs } h\ t\ i \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *arrays-on-Ref-set* [rewrite]:  $arrays (Ref.set\ p\ x\ h)\ t\ i = arrays\ h\ t\ i$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *refs-on-Array-alloc* [rewrite]:  $refs (snd (Array.alloc\ xs\ h))\ t\ i = refs\ h\ t\ i$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *arrays-on-Ref-alloc* [rewrite]:  $arrays (snd (Ref.alloc\ x\ h))\ t\ i = arrays\ h\ t\ i$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *arrays-on-Array-alloc* [rewrite]:  $i < lim\ h \implies arrays (snd (Array.alloc\ xs\ h))\ t\ i = arrays\ h\ t\ i$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *refs-on-Ref-alloc* [rewrite]:  $i < lim\ h \implies refs (snd (Ref.alloc\ x\ h))\ t\ i = refs\ h\ t\ i$   
 ⟨proof⟩

⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *new-rule*:

⟨emp⟩  $Array.new\ n\ x <\lambda r. r \mapsto_a replicate\ n\ x>$  ⟨proof⟩

⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *of-list-rule*:

⟨emp⟩  $Array.of-list\ xs <\lambda r. r \mapsto_a xs>$  ⟨proof⟩

⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *ref-rule*:

⟨emp⟩  $ref\ x <\lambda r. r \mapsto_r x>$  ⟨proof⟩

⟨ML⟩

## 16.6 Definition of procedures

ASCII abbreviations for ML files.

**abbreviation** (*input*) *ex-assn-ascii* ::  $(!a \Rightarrow assn) \Rightarrow assn$  (**binder** EXA 11)

**where**  $ex-assn-ascii \equiv ex-assn$

**abbreviation** (*input*) *models-ascii* ::  $pheap \Rightarrow assn \Rightarrow bool$  (**infix** |= 50)

**where**  $h\ |=\ P \equiv h\ \models\ P$

⟨ML⟩

Some simple tests

**theorem** ⟨emp⟩  $ref\ x <\lambda r. r \mapsto_r x>$  ⟨proof⟩

**theorem**  $<a \mapsto_r x> ref\ x <\lambda r. a \mapsto_r x * r \mapsto_r x>$  ⟨proof⟩

**theorem**  $<a \mapsto_r x> (!a) <\lambda r. a \mapsto_r x * \uparrow(r = x)>$  ⟨proof⟩

**theorem**  $<a \mapsto_r x * b \mapsto_r y> (!a) <\lambda r. a \mapsto_r x * b \mapsto_r y * \uparrow(r = x)>$  ⟨proof⟩

```

theorem <a ↦r x * b ↦r y> (!b) <λr. a ↦r x * b ↦r y * ↑(r = y)> <proof>
theorem <a ↦r x> do { a := y; !a } <λr. a ↦r y * ↑(r = y)> <proof>
theorem <a ↦r x> do { a := y; a := z; !a } <λr. a ↦r z * ↑(r = z)> <proof>
theorem <a ↦r x> do { y ← !a; ref y } <λr. a ↦r x * r ↦r x> <proof>
theorem <emp> return x <λr. ↑(r = x)> <proof>

```

**end**

```

theory GCD-Impl
  imports SepAuto
begin

```

A tutorial example for computation of GCD.

Turn on auto2's trace

```
declare [[print-trace]]
```

Property of gcd that justifies the recursive computation. Add as a right-to-left rewrite rule.

<ML>

Functional version of gcd.

```

fun gcd-fun :: nat ⇒ nat ⇒ nat where
  gcd-fun a b = (if b = 0 then a else gcd-fun b (a mod b))

```

The fun package automatically generates induction rule upon showing termination. This adds the induction rule for the @fun\_induct command.

<ML>

```

lemma gcd-fun-correct:
  gcd-fun a b = gcd a b
<proof>

```

Imperative version of gcd.

```

partial-function (heap) gcd-impl :: nat ⇒ nat ⇒ nat Heap where
  gcd-impl a b = (
    if b = 0 then return a
    else do {
      c ← return (a mod b);
      r ← gcd-impl b c;
      return r
    })

```

The program is sufficiently simple that we can prove the Hoare triple directly (without going through the functional program).

```

theorem gcd-impl-correct:
  <emp> gcd-impl a b <λr. ↑(r = gcd a b)>

```

*<proof>*

Turn off trace.

**declare** *[[print-trace = false]]*

**end**

## 17 Implementation of linked list

**theory** *LinkedList*  
**imports** *SepAuto*  
**begin**

Examples in linked lists. Definitions and some of the examples are based on *List\_Seg* and *Open\_List* theories in [5] by Lammich and Meis.

### 17.1 List Assertion

**datatype** *'a node = Node (val: 'a) (nxt: 'a node ref option)*  
*<ML>*

**fun** *node-encode :: 'a::heap node ⇒ nat where*  
*node-encode (Node x r) = to-nat (x, r)*

**instance** *node :: (heap) heap*  
*<proof>*

**fun** *os-list :: 'a::heap list ⇒ 'a node ref option ⇒ assn where*  
*os-list [] p = ↑(p = None)*  
*| os-list (x # l) (Some p) = (∃<sub>A</sub> q. p ↦<sub>r</sub> Node x q \* os-list l q)*  
*| os-list (x # l) None = false*  
*<ML>*

**lemma** *os-list-empty [forward-ent]:*  
*os-list [] p ⇒<sub>A</sub> ↑(p = None) <proof>*

**lemma** *os-list-Cons [forward-ent]:*  
*os-list (x # l) p ⇒<sub>A</sub> (∃<sub>A</sub> q. the p ↦<sub>r</sub> Node x q \* os-list l q \* ↑(p ≠ None))*  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *os-list-none: emp ⇒<sub>A</sub> os-list [] None <proof>*

**lemma** *os-list-constr-ent:*  
*p ↦<sub>r</sub> Node x q \* os-list l q ⇒<sub>A</sub> os-list (x # l) (Some p) <proof>*

*<ML>*

**type-synonym** *'a os-list = 'a node ref option*

## 17.2 Basic operations

**definition** *os-empty* :: 'a::heap os-list Heap **where**  
*os-empty* = return None

**lemma** *os-empty-rule* [hoare-triple]:  
 $\langle emp \rangle os\_empty \langle os\_list [] \rangle \langle proof \rangle$

**definition** *os-is-empty* :: 'a::heap os-list  $\Rightarrow$  bool Heap **where**  
*os-is-empty* b = return (b = None)

**lemma** *os-is-empty-rule* [hoare-triple]:  
 $\langle os\_list\ xs\ b \rangle os\_is\_empty\ b \langle \lambda r. os\_list\ xs\ b * \uparrow(r \longleftrightarrow xs = []) \rangle$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**definition** *os-prepend* :: 'a  $\Rightarrow$  'a::heap os-list  $\Rightarrow$  'a os-list Heap **where**  
*os-prepend* a n = do { p  $\leftarrow$  ref (Node a n); return (Some p) }

**lemma** *os-prepend-rule* [hoare-triple]:  
 $\langle os\_list\ xs\ n \rangle os\_prepend\ x\ n \langle os\_list\ (x \# xs) \rangle \langle proof \rangle$

**definition** *os-pop* :: 'a::heap os-list  $\Rightarrow$  ('a  $\times$  'a os-list) Heap **where**  
*os-pop* r = (case r of  
 None  $\Rightarrow$  raise STR "Empty Os-list" |  
 Some p  $\Rightarrow$  do { m  $\leftarrow$  !p; return (val m, next m)})

**lemma** *os-pop-rule* [hoare-triple]:  
 $\langle os\_list\ xs\ (Some\ p) \rangle$   
 $os\_pop\ (Some\ p)$   
 $\langle \lambda(x,r'). os\_list\ (tl\ xs)\ r' * p \mapsto_r (Node\ x\ r') * \uparrow(x = hd\ xs) \rangle$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

## 17.3 Reverse

**partial-function** (*heap*) *os-reverse-aux* :: 'a::heap os-list  $\Rightarrow$  'a os-list  $\Rightarrow$  'a os-list Heap **where**

*os-reverse-aux* q p = (case p of  
 None  $\Rightarrow$  return q |  
 Some r  $\Rightarrow$  do {  
 v  $\leftarrow$  !r;  
 r := Node (val v) q;  
*os-reverse-aux* p (next v) })

**lemma** *os-reverse-aux-rule* [hoare-triple]:  
 $\langle os\_list\ xs\ p * os\_list\ ys\ q \rangle$   
 $os\_reverse\_aux\ q\ p$   
 $\langle os\_list\ ((rev\ xs) @ ys) \rangle$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**definition** *os-reverse* :: 'a::heap os-list  $\Rightarrow$  'a os-list Heap **where**



$os\text{-reverse } p = os\text{-reverse-aux } None \ p$

**lemma** *os-reverse-rule*:

$\langle os\text{-list } xs \ p \rangle \ os\text{-reverse } p \ \langle os\text{-list } (rev \ xs) \rangle \ \langle proof \rangle$

## 17.4 Remove

$\langle ML \rangle$

**partial-function** (*heap*) *os-rem* :: 'a::heap  $\Rightarrow$  'a node ref option  $\Rightarrow$  'a node ref option *Heap* **where**

```
os-rem x b = (case b of
  None  $\Rightarrow$  return None |
  Some p  $\Rightarrow$  do {
    n  $\leftarrow$  !p;
    q  $\leftarrow$  os-rem x (next n);
    (if (val n = x)
      then return q
      else do {
        p := Node (val n) q;
        return (Some p) }) })
```

**lemma** *os-rem-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

$\langle os\text{-list } xs \ b \rangle \ os\text{-rem } x \ b \ \langle \lambda r. \ os\text{-list } (removeAll \ x \ xs) \ r \rangle_t \ \langle proof \rangle$

## 17.5 Extract list

**partial-function** (*heap*) *extract-list* :: 'a::heap *os-list*  $\Rightarrow$  'a list *Heap* **where**

```
extract-list p = (case p of
  None  $\Rightarrow$  return []
| Some pp  $\Rightarrow$  do {
  v  $\leftarrow$  !pp;
  ls  $\leftarrow$  extract-list (next v);
  return (val v # ls)
})
```

**lemma** *extract-list-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

$\langle os\text{-list } l \ p \rangle \ extract\text{-list } p \ \langle \lambda r. \ os\text{-list } l \ p \ * \ \uparrow(r = l) \rangle \ \langle proof \rangle$

## 17.6 Ordered insert

**fun** *list-insert* :: 'a::ord  $\Rightarrow$  'a list  $\Rightarrow$  'a list **where**

```
list-insert x [] = [x]
| list-insert x (y # ys) = (
  if x  $\leq$  y then x # (y # ys) else y # list-insert x ys)
 $\langle ML \rangle$ 
```

**lemma** *list-insert-length*:

$length (list-insert\ x\ xs) = length\ xs + 1$   
 <proof>  
 <ML>

**lemma** *list-insert-mset* [rewrite]:  
 $mset (list-insert\ x\ xs) = \{x\} + mset\ xs$   
 <proof>

**lemma** *list-insert-set* [rewrite]:  
 $set (list-insert\ x\ xs) = \{x\} \cup set\ xs$   
 <proof>

**lemma** *list-insert-sorted* [forward]:  
 $sorted\ xs \implies sorted (list-insert\ x\ xs)$   
 <proof>

**partial-function** (*heap*) *os-insert* :: 'a::{ord,heap}  $\Rightarrow$  'a *os-list*  $\Rightarrow$  'a *os-list* *Heap*  
 where

*os-insert*  $x\ b = (case\ b\ of$   
   *None*  $\Rightarrow os-prepend\ x\ None$   
   | *Some*  $p \Rightarrow do \{$   
      $v \leftarrow !p;$   
     *(if*  $x \leq val\ v$  *then*  $os-prepend\ x\ b$   
     *else*  $do \{$   
        $q \leftarrow os-insert\ x\ (next\ v);$   
        $p := Node\ (val\ v)\ q;$   
        $return\ (Some\ p)\ \}\ \})$

**lemma** *os-insert-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:  
 $\langle os-list\ xs\ b \rangle os-insert\ x\ b \langle os-list\ (list-insert\ x\ xs) \rangle$   
 <proof>

## 17.7 Insertion sort

**fun** *insert-sort* :: 'a::ord *list*  $\Rightarrow$  'a *list* **where**  
   *insert-sort*  $[] = []$   
 | *insert-sort*  $(x \# xs) = list-insert\ x\ (insert-sort\ xs)$   
 <ML>

**lemma** *insert-sort-mset* [rewrite]:  
 $mset (insert-sort\ xs) = mset\ xs$   
 <proof>

**lemma** *insert-sort-sorted* [forward]:  
 $sorted (insert-sort\ xs)$   
 <proof>

**lemma** *insert-sort-is-sort* [rewrite]:  
 $insert-sort\ xs = sort\ xs$  <proof>

**fun** *os-insert-sort-aux* :: 'a::{ord,heap} list  $\Rightarrow$  'a os-list Heap **where**  
*os-insert-sort-aux* [] = (return None)  
| *os-insert-sort-aux* (x # xs) = do {  
    *b*  $\leftarrow$  *os-insert-sort-aux* xs;  
    *b'*  $\leftarrow$  *os-insert* x *b*;  
    return *b'*  
}

**lemma** *os-insert-sort-aux-correct* [hoare-triple]:  
 $\langle emp \rangle$  *os-insert-sort-aux* xs  $\langle os\text{-list } (insert\text{-sort } xs) \rangle$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**definition** *os-insert-sort* :: 'a::{ord,heap} list  $\Rightarrow$  'a list Heap **where**  
*os-insert-sort* xs = do {  
    *p*  $\leftarrow$  *os-insert-sort-aux* xs;  
    *l*  $\leftarrow$  *extract-list* *p*;  
    return *l*  
}

**lemma** *insertion-sort-rule* [hoare-triple]:  
 $\langle emp \rangle$  *os-insert-sort* xs  $\langle \lambda ys. \uparrow(ys = sort\ xs) \rangle_t \langle proof \rangle$

## 17.8 Merging two lists

**fun** *merge-list* :: ('a::ord) list  $\Rightarrow$  'a list  $\Rightarrow$  'a list **where**  
*merge-list* xs [] = xs  
| *merge-list* [] ys = ys  
| *merge-list* (x # xs) (y # ys) = (  
    if  $x \leq y$  then x # (*merge-list* xs (y # ys))  
    else y # (*merge-list* (x # xs) ys)  
 $\langle ML \rangle$

**lemma** *merge-list-correct* [rewrite]:  
set (*merge-list* xs ys) = set xs  $\cup$  set ys  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *merge-list-sorted* [forward]:  
sorted xs  $\implies$  sorted ys  $\implies$  sorted (*merge-list* xs ys)  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**partial-function** (*heap*) *merge-os-list* :: ('a::{heap, ord}) os-list  $\Rightarrow$  'a os-list  $\Rightarrow$  'a os-list Heap **where**  
*merge-os-list* p q = (  
    if *p* = None then return *q*  
    else if *q* = None then return *p*  
    else do {  
        *np*  $\leftarrow$  !(*the* *p*); *nq*  $\leftarrow$  !(*the* *q*);  
        if val *np*  $\leq$  val *nq* then

```

do { npq ← merge-os-list (nxt np) q;
    (the p) := Node (val np) npq;
    return p }
else
do { pnq ← merge-os-list p (nxt nq);
    (the q) := Node (val nq) pnq;
    return q } })

```

**lemma** *merge-os-list-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

```

<os-list xs p * os-list ys q>
merge-os-list p q
<λr. os-list (merge-list xs ys) r>
⟨proof⟩

```

## 17.9 List copy

**partial-function** (*heap*) *copy-os-list* :: ('a::heap os-list ⇒ 'a os-list Heap **where**

```

copy-os-list b = (case b of
  None ⇒ return None
| Some p ⇒ do {
  v ← !p;
  q ← copy-os-list (nxt v);
  os-prepend (val v) q })

```

**lemma** *copy-os-list-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

<os-list xs b> copy-os-list b <λr. os-list xs b * os-list xs r>
⟨proof⟩

```

## 17.10 Higher-order functions

**partial-function** (*heap*) *map-os-list* :: ('a::heap ⇒ 'a) ⇒ 'a os-list ⇒ 'a os-list Heap **where**

```

map-os-list f b = (case b of
  None ⇒ return None
| Some p ⇒ do {
  v ← !p;
  q ← map-os-list f (nxt v);
  p := Node (f (val v)) q;
  return (Some p) })

```

**lemma** *map-os-list-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

<os-list xs b> map-os-list f b <os-list (map f xs)>
⟨proof⟩

```

**partial-function** (*heap*) *filter-os-list* :: ('a::heap ⇒ bool) ⇒ 'a os-list ⇒ 'a os-list Heap **where**

```

filter-os-list f b = (case b of
  None ⇒ return None
| Some p ⇒ do {
  v ← !p;

```

```

q ← filter-os-list f (next v);
(if (f (val v)) then do {
  p := Node (val v) q;
  return (Some p) }
else return q) }

```

**lemma** *filter-os-list-rule* [hoare-triple]:

<os-list xs b> filter-os-list f b < $\lambda r$ . os-list (filter f xs) r \* true>  
 <proof>

**partial-function** (heap) *filter-os-list2* :: ('a::heap  $\Rightarrow$  bool)  $\Rightarrow$  'a os-list  $\Rightarrow$  'a os-list  
 Heap **where**

```

filter-os-list2 f b = (case b of
  None  $\Rightarrow$  return None
| Some p  $\Rightarrow$  do {
  v ← !p;
  q ← filter-os-list2 f (next v);
  (if (f (val v)) then os-prepend (val v) q
  else return q) }

```

**lemma** *filter-os-list2-rule* [hoare-triple]:

<os-list xs b> filter-os-list2 f b < $\lambda r$ . os-list xs b \* os-list (filter f xs) r>  
 <proof>

<ML>

**partial-function** (heap) *fold-os-list* :: ('a::heap  $\Rightarrow$  'b  $\Rightarrow$  'b)  $\Rightarrow$  'a os-list  $\Rightarrow$  'b  $\Rightarrow$   
 'b Heap **where**

```

fold-os-list f b x = (case b of
  None  $\Rightarrow$  return x
| Some p  $\Rightarrow$  do {
  v ← !p;
  r ← fold-os-list f (next v) (f (val v) x);
  return r})

```

**lemma** *fold-os-list-rule* [hoare-triple]:

<os-list xs b> fold-os-list f b x < $\lambda r$ . os-list xs b \*  $\uparrow$ (r = fold f xs x)>  
 <proof>

**end**

## 18 Implementation of binary search tree

**theory** *BST-Impl*

**imports** *SepAuto ../Functional/BST*

**begin**

Imperative version of binary search trees.

## 18.1 Tree nodes

**datatype** ('a, 'b) node =  
Node (lsub: ('a, 'b) node ref option) (key: 'a) (val: 'b) (rsub: ('a, 'b) node ref option)  
<ML>

**fun** node-encode :: ('a::heap, 'b::heap) node  $\Rightarrow$  nat **where**  
node-encode (Node l k v r) = to-nat (l, k, v, r)

**instance** node :: (heap, heap) heap  
<proof>

**fun** btree :: ('a::heap, 'b::heap) tree  $\Rightarrow$  ('a, 'b) node ref option  $\Rightarrow$  assn **where**  
btree Tip p =  $\uparrow$ (p = None)  
| btree (tree.Node lt k v rt) (Some p) = ( $\exists$  Alp rp. p  $\mapsto_r$  Node lp k v rp \* btree lt lp \* btree rt rp)  
| btree (tree.Node lt k v rt) None = false  
<ML>

**lemma** btree-Tip [forward-ent]: btree Tip p  $\Longrightarrow_A$   $\uparrow$ (p = None) <proof>

**lemma** btree-Node [forward-ent]:  
btree (tree.Node lt k v rt) p  $\Longrightarrow_A$  ( $\exists$  Alp rp. the p  $\mapsto_r$  Node lp k v rp \* btree lt lp \* btree rt rp \*  $\uparrow$ (p  $\neq$  None))  
<proof>

**lemma** btree-none: emp  $\Longrightarrow_A$  btree tree.Tip None <proof>

**lemma** btree-constr-ent:  
p  $\mapsto_r$  Node lp k v rp \* btree lt lp \* btree rt rp  $\Longrightarrow_A$  btree (tree.Node lt k v rt) (Some p) <proof>

<ML>

**type-synonym** ('a, 'b) btree = ('a, 'b) node ref option

## 18.2 Operations

### 18.2.1 Basic operations

**definition** tree-empty :: ('a, 'b) btree Heap **where**  
tree-empty = return None

**lemma** tree-empty-rule [hoare-triple]:  
<emp> tree-empty <btree Tip> <proof>

**definition** tree-is-empty :: ('a, 'b) btree  $\Rightarrow$  bool Heap **where**  
tree-is-empty b = return (b = None)

**lemma** *tree-is-empty-rule*:

$\langle \text{btree } t \ b \rangle \text{ tree-is-empty } b \ \langle \lambda r. \text{ btree } t \ b \ * \ \uparrow(r \ \longleftrightarrow \ t = \text{Tip}) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**definition** *btree-constr* ::

$( 'a :: \text{heap}, 'b :: \text{heap} ) \text{ btree} \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'b \Rightarrow ( 'a, 'b ) \text{ btree} \Rightarrow ( 'a, 'b ) \text{ btree Heap}$  **where**  
 $\text{btree-constr } lp \ k \ v \ rp = \text{do } \{ p \leftarrow \text{ref } (\text{Node } lp \ k \ v \ rp); \text{return } (\text{Some } p) \}$

**lemma** *btree-constr-rule* [hoare-triple]:

$\langle \text{btree } lt \ lp \ * \ \text{btree } rt \ rp \rangle \text{ btree-constr } lp \ k \ v \ rp \ \langle \text{btree } (\text{tree.Node } lt \ k \ v \ rt) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

### 18.2.2 Insertion

**partial-function** (*heap*) *btree-insert* ::

$'a :: \{ \text{heap}, \text{linorder} \} \Rightarrow 'b :: \text{heap} \Rightarrow ( 'a, 'b ) \text{ btree} \Rightarrow ( 'a, 'b ) \text{ btree Heap}$  **where**

$\text{btree-insert } k \ v \ b = (\text{case } b \ \text{of}$

$\text{None} \Rightarrow \text{btree-constr } \text{None } k \ v \ \text{None}$

$| \text{Some } p \Rightarrow \text{do } \{$

$t \leftarrow !p;$

$(\text{if } k = \text{key } t \ \text{then } \text{do } \{$

$p := \text{Node } (\text{lsub } t) \ k \ v \ (\text{rsub } t);$

$\text{return } (\text{Some } p) \}$

$\text{else if } k < \text{key } t \ \text{then } \text{do } \{$

$q \leftarrow \text{btree-insert } k \ v \ (\text{lsub } t);$

$p := \text{Node } q \ (\text{key } t) \ (\text{val } t) \ (\text{rsub } t);$

$\text{return } (\text{Some } p) \}$

$\text{else } \text{do } \{$

$q \leftarrow \text{btree-insert } k \ v \ (\text{rsub } t);$

$p := \text{Node } (\text{lsub } t) \ (\text{key } t) \ (\text{val } t) \ q;$

$\text{return } (\text{Some } p) \}$

**lemma** *btree-insert-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

$\langle \text{btree } t \ b \rangle$

$\text{btree-insert } k \ v \ b$

$\langle \text{btree } (\text{tree-insert } k \ v \ t) \rangle$

$\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

### 18.2.3 Deletion

**partial-function** (*heap*) *btree-del-min* ::  $( 'a :: \text{heap}, 'b :: \text{heap} ) \text{ btree} \Rightarrow (( 'a \times 'b ) \times ( 'a, 'b ) \text{ btree}) \text{ Heap}$  **where**

$\text{btree-del-min } b = (\text{case } b \ \text{of}$

$\text{None} \Rightarrow \text{raise STR "del-min: empty tree"}$

$| \text{Some } p \Rightarrow \text{do } \{$

$t \leftarrow !p;$

$(\text{if } \text{lsub } t = \text{None} \ \text{then}$

$\text{return } ((\text{key } t, \text{val } t), \text{rsub } t)$

$\text{else } \text{do } \{$

$r \leftarrow \text{btree-del-min } (\text{lsub } t);$

$p := \text{Node } (\text{snd } r) \ (\text{key } t) \ (\text{val } t) \ (\text{rsub } t);$

return (fst r, Some p) }) }

**lemma** *btree-del-min-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

<btree t b \* ↑(b ≠ None)>  
 btree-del-min b  
 <λ(r,p). btree (snd (del-min t)) p \* ↑(r = fst (del-min t))><sub>t</sub>  
 ⟨proof⟩

**definition** *btree-del-elt* :: ('a::heap, 'b::heap) btree ⇒ ('a, 'b) btree Heap **where**

*btree-del-elt* b = (case b of  
 None ⇒ raise STR "del-elt: empty tree"  
 | Some p ⇒ do {  
 t ← !p;  
 (if lsub t = None then return (rsub t)  
 else if rsub t = None then return (lsub t)  
 else do {  
 r ← btree-del-min (rsub t);  
 p := Node (lsub t) (fst (fst r)) (snd (fst r)) (snd r);  
 return (Some p) }) })

**lemma** *btree-del-elt-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

<btree (tree.Node lt x v rt) b>  
*btree-del-elt* b  
 <btree (delete-elt-tree (tree.Node lt x v rt))><sub>t</sub> ⟨proof⟩

**partial-function** (*heap*) *btree-delete* ::

'a::{heap,linorder} ⇒ ('a, 'b::heap) btree ⇒ ('a, 'b) btree Heap **where**

*btree-delete* x b = (case b of  
 None ⇒ return None  
 | Some p ⇒ do {  
 t ← !p;  
 (if x = key t then do {  
 r ← btree-del-elt b;  
 return r }  
 else if x < key t then do {  
 q ← btree-delete x (lsub t);  
 p := Node q (key t) (val t) (rsub t);  
 return (Some p) }  
 else do {  
 q ← btree-delete x (rsub t);  
 p := Node (lsub t) (key t) (val t) q;  
 return (Some p) }) })

**lemma** *btree-delete-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

<btree t b>  
*btree-delete* x b  
 <btree (tree-delete x t)><sub>t</sub>  
 ⟨proof⟩



### 18.2.4 Search

**partial-function** (*heap*) *btree-search* ::  
 $'a::\{\text{heap}, \text{linorder}\} \Rightarrow ('a, 'b::\text{heap}) \text{btree} \Rightarrow 'b \text{ option Heap}$  **where**  
*btree-search* *x b* = (case *b* of  
 None  $\Rightarrow$  return None  
 | Some *p*  $\Rightarrow$  do {  
   *t*  $\leftarrow$  !*p*;  
   (if *x* = key *t* then return (Some (val *t*))  
   else if *x* < key *t* then *btree-search* *x* (lsub *t*)  
   else *btree-search* *x* (rsub *t*)) }

**lemma** *btree-search-correct* [*hoare-triple*]:

$\langle \text{btree } t \ b \ * \ \uparrow(\text{tree-sorted } t) \rangle$   
*btree-search* *x b*  
 $\langle \lambda r. \text{btree } t \ b \ * \ \uparrow(r = \text{tree-search } t \ x) \rangle$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

### 18.3 Outer interface

Express Hoare triples for operations on binary search tree in terms of the mapping represented by the tree.

**definition** *btree-map* :: (*'a, 'b*) *map*  $\Rightarrow$  ( $'a::\{\text{heap}, \text{linorder}\}, 'b::\text{heap}$ ) *node ref option*  $\Rightarrow$  *assn* **where**

*btree-map* *M p* = ( $\exists_A t. \text{btree } t \ p \ * \ \uparrow(\text{tree-sorted } t) \ * \ \uparrow(M = \text{tree-map } t)$ )  
 $\langle ML \rangle$

**theorem** *btree-empty-rule-map* [*hoare-triple*]:

$\langle \text{emp} \rangle \text{tree-empty} \langle \text{btree-map empty-map} \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**theorem** *btree-insert-rule-map* [*hoare-triple*]:

$\langle \text{btree-map } M \ b \rangle \text{btree-insert } k \ v \ b \langle \text{btree-map } (M \ \{k \rightarrow v\}) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**theorem** *btree-delete-rule-map* [*hoare-triple*]:

$\langle \text{btree-map } M \ b \rangle \text{btree-delete } x \ b \langle \text{btree-map } (\text{delete-map } x \ M) \rangle_t \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**theorem** *btree-search-rule-map* [*hoare-triple*]:

$\langle \text{btree-map } M \ b \rangle \text{btree-search } x \ b \langle \lambda r. \text{btree-map } M \ b \ * \ \uparrow(r = M \langle x \rangle) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

end

## 19 Implementation of red-black tree

**theory** *RBTree-Impl*

**imports** *SepAuto ../Functional/RBTree*

**begin**

Verification of imperative red-black trees.

## 19.1 Tree nodes

**datatype** ('a, 'b) rbt-node =

*Node* (*lsub*: ('a, 'b) rbt-node ref option) (*cl*: color) (*key*: 'a) (*val*: 'b) (*rsub*: ('a, 'b) rbt-node ref option)  
 ⟨ML⟩

**fun** color-encode :: color ⇒ nat **where**

color-encode B = 0  
 | color-encode R = 1

**instance** color :: heap

⟨proof⟩

**fun** rbt-node-encode :: ('a::heap, 'b::heap) rbt-node ⇒ nat **where**

rbt-node-encode (Node l c k v r) = to-nat (l, c, k, v, r)

**instance** rbt-node :: (heap, heap) heap

⟨proof⟩

**fun** btree :: ('a::heap, 'b::heap) rbt ⇒ ('a, 'b) rbt-node ref option ⇒ assn **where**

btree Leaf p = ↑(p = None)  
 | btree (rbt.Node lt c k v rt) (Some p) = (∃<sub>A</sub> lp rp. p ↦<sub>r</sub> Node lp c k v rp \* btree lt lp \* btree rt rp)  
 | btree (rbt.Node lt c k v rt) None = false  
 ⟨ML⟩

**lemma** btree-Leaf [forward-ent]: btree Leaf p ⇒<sub>A</sub> ↑(p = None) ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** btree-Node [forward-ent]:

btree (rbt.Node lt c k v rt) p ⇒<sub>A</sub> (∃<sub>A</sub> lp rp. the p ↦<sub>r</sub> Node lp c k v rp \* btree lt lp \* btree rt rp \* ↑(p ≠ None))  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** btree-none: emp ⇒<sub>A</sub> btree Leaf None ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** btree-constr-ent:

p ↦<sub>r</sub> Node lp c k v rp \* btree lt lp \* btree rt rp ⇒<sub>A</sub> btree (rbt.Node lt c k v rt) (Some p) ⟨proof⟩

⟨ML⟩

**type-synonym** ('a, 'b) btree = ('a, 'b) rbt-node ref option

## 19.2 Operations

### 19.2.1 Basic operations

**definition** tree-empty :: ('a, 'b) btree Heap **where**

tree-empty = return None

**lemma** *tree-empty-rule* [hoare-triple]:

$\langle emp \rangle$  *tree-empty*  $\langle btree\ Leaf \rangle$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**definition** *tree-is-empty* :: ('a, 'b) btree  $\Rightarrow$  bool Heap **where**

*tree-is-empty* b = return (b = None)

**lemma** *tree-is-empty-rule*:

$\langle btree\ t\ b \rangle$  *tree-is-empty* b  $\langle \lambda r. btree\ t\ b * \uparrow(r \longleftrightarrow t = Leaf) \rangle$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**definition** *btree-constr* ::

('a::heap, 'b::heap) btree  $\Rightarrow$  color  $\Rightarrow$  'a  $\Rightarrow$  'b  $\Rightarrow$  ('a, 'b) btree  $\Rightarrow$  ('a, 'b) btree Heap

**where**

*btree-constr* lp c k v rp = do { p  $\leftarrow$  ref (Node lp c k v rp); return (Some p) }

**lemma** *btree-constr-rule* [hoare-triple]:

$\langle btree\ lt\ lp * btree\ rt\ rp \rangle$   
*btree-constr* lp c k v rp  
 $\langle btree\ (rbt.Node\ lt\ c\ k\ v\ rt) \rangle$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**definition** *set-color* :: color  $\Rightarrow$  ('a::heap, 'b::heap) btree  $\Rightarrow$  unit Heap **where**

*set-color* c p = (case p of  
None  $\Rightarrow$  raise STR "set-color"  
| Some pp  $\Rightarrow$  do {  
t  $\leftarrow$  !pp;  
pp := Node (lsub t) c (key t) (val t) (rsub t)  
})

**lemma** *set-color-rule* [hoare-triple]:

$\langle btree\ (rbt.Node\ a\ c\ x\ v\ b)\ p \rangle$   
*set-color* c' p  
 $\langle \lambda r. btree\ (rbt.Node\ a\ c'\ x\ v\ b)\ p \rangle$   $\langle proof \rangle$

**definition** *get-color* :: ('a::heap, 'b::heap) btree  $\Rightarrow$  color Heap **where**

*get-color* p = (case p of  
None  $\Rightarrow$  return B  
| Some pp  $\Rightarrow$  do {  
t  $\leftarrow$  !pp;  
return (cl t)  
})

**lemma** *get-color-rule* [hoare-triple]:

$\langle btree\ t\ p \rangle$  *get-color* p  $\langle \lambda r. btree\ t\ p * \uparrow(r = rbt.cl\ t) \rangle$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**definition** *paint* :: color  $\Rightarrow$  ('a::heap, 'b::heap) btree  $\Rightarrow$  unit Heap **where**

*paint* c p = (case p of  
None  $\Rightarrow$  return ()  
| Some pp  $\Rightarrow$  do {

```

    t ← !pp;
    pp := Node (lsub t) c (key t) (val t) (rsub t)
  })

```

**lemma** *paint-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

<btree t p>
  paint c p
<λ-. btree (RBTree.paint c t) p>
<proof>

```

## 19.2.2 Rotation

**definition** *btree-rotate-l* :: ('a::heap, 'b::heap) btree ⇒ ('a, 'b) btree Heap **where**

```

btree-rotate-l p = (case p of
  None ⇒ raise STR "Empty btree"
| Some pp ⇒ do {
  t ← !pp;
  (case rsub t of
    None ⇒ raise STR "Empty rsub"
  | Some rp ⇒ do {
    rt ← !rp;
    pp := Node (lsub t) (cl t) (key t) (val t) (lsub rt);
    rp := Node p (cl rt) (key rt) (val rt) (rsub rt);
    return (rsub t) })})

```

**lemma** *btree-rotate-l-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

<btree (rbt.Node a c1 x v (rbt.Node b c2 y w c)) p>
  btree-rotate-l p
<btree (rbt.Node (rbt.Node a c1 x v b) c2 y w c)> <proof>

```

**definition** *btree-rotate-r* :: ('a::heap, 'b::heap) btree ⇒ ('a, 'b) btree Heap **where**

```

btree-rotate-r p = (case p of
  None ⇒ raise STR "Empty btree"
| Some pp ⇒ do {
  t ← !pp;
  (case lsub t of
    None ⇒ raise STR "Empty lsub"
  | Some lp ⇒ do {
    lt ← !lp;
    pp := Node (rsub lt) (cl t) (key t) (val t) (rsub t);
    lp := Node (lsub lt) (cl lt) (key lt) (val lt) p;
    return (lsub t) })})

```

**lemma** *btree-rotate-r-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

<btree (rbt.Node (rbt.Node a c1 x v b) c2 y w c) p>
  btree-rotate-r p
<btree (rbt.Node a c1 x v (rbt.Node b c2 y w c))> <proof>

```

### 19.2.3 Balance

**definition** *btree-balanceR* :: ('a::heap, 'b::heap) btree ⇒ ('a, 'b) btree Heap **where**

```

btree-balanceR p = (case p of None ⇒ return None | Some pp ⇒ do {
  t ← !pp;
  cl-r ← get-color (rsub t);
  if cl-r = R then do {
    rt ← !(the (rsub t));
    cl-lr ← get-color (lsub rt);
    cl-rr ← get-color (rsub rt);
    if cl-lr = R then do {
      rp' ← btree-rotate-r (rsub t);
      pp := Node (lsub t) (cl t) (key t) (val t) rp';
      p' ← btree-rotate-l p;
      t' ← !(the p');
      set-color B (rsub t');
      return p'
    } else if cl-rr = R then do {
      p' ← btree-rotate-l p;
      t' ← !(the p');
      set-color B (rsub t');
      return p'
    } else return p }
  else return p})

```

**lemma** *balanceR-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

```

<btree (rbt.Node l B k v r) p>
  btree-balanceR p
  <btree (balanceR l k v r)>
<proof>

```

**definition** *btree-balance* :: ('a::heap, 'b::heap) btree ⇒ ('a, 'b) btree Heap **where**

```

btree-balance p = (case p of None ⇒ return None | Some pp ⇒ do {
  t ← !pp;
  cl-l ← get-color (lsub t);
  if cl-l = R then do {
    lt ← !(the (lsub t));
    cl-rl ← get-color (rsub lt);
    cl-ll ← get-color (lsub lt);
    if cl-ll = R then do {
      p' ← btree-rotate-r p;
      t' ← !(the p');
      set-color B (lsub t');
      return p' }
    else if cl-rl = R then do {
      lp' ← btree-rotate-l (lsub t);
      pp := Node lp' (cl t) (key t) (val t) (rsub t);
      p' ← btree-rotate-r p;
      t' ← !(the p');
      set-color B (lsub t');

```

```

    return p'
  } else btree-balanceR p }
else do {
  p' ← btree-balanceR p;
  return p'}}
```

**lemma** *balance-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

```

<btree (rbt.Node l B k v r) p>
  btree-balance p
<btree (balance l k v r)>
⟨proof⟩
```

### 19.2.4 Insertion

**partial-function** (*heap*) *rbt-ins* ::

*'a::{heap,ord} ⇒ 'b::heap ⇒ ('a, 'b) btree ⇒ ('a, 'b) btree Heap* **where**

```

rbt-ins k v p = (case p of
  None ⇒ btree-constr None R k v None
| Some pp ⇒ do {
  t ← !pp;
  (if cl t = B then
    (if k = key t then do {
      pp := Node (lsub t) (cl t) k v (rsub t);
      return (Some pp) }
    else if k < key t then do {
      q ← rbt-ins k v (lsub t);
      pp := Node q (cl t) (key t) (val t) (rsub t);
      btree-balance p }
    else do {
      q ← rbt-ins k v (rsub t);
      pp := Node (lsub t) (cl t) (key t) (val t) q;
      btree-balance p })
  else
    (if k = key t then do {
      pp := Node (lsub t) (cl t) k v (rsub t);
      return (Some pp) }
    else if k < key t then do {
      q ← rbt-ins k v (lsub t);
      pp := Node q (cl t) (key t) (val t) (rsub t);
      return (Some pp) }
    else do {
      q ← rbt-ins k v (rsub t);
      pp := Node (lsub t) (cl t) (key t) (val t) q;
      return (Some pp) })))})
```

**lemma** *rbt-ins-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

```

<btree t p>
  rbt-ins k v p
<btree (ins k v t)>
```

*<proof>*

**definition** *rbt-insert* ::

*'a::heap,ord*  $\Rightarrow$  *'b::heap*  $\Rightarrow$  (*'a, 'b*) *btree*  $\Rightarrow$  (*'a, 'b*) *btree Heap* **where**  
*rbt-insert* *k v p* = *do* {  
  *p'*  $\leftarrow$  *rbt-ins k v p*;  
  *paint B p'*;  
  *return p'* }

**lemma** *rbt-insert-to-fun* [*hoare-triple*]:

*<btree t p>*  
*rbt-insert k v p*  
*<btree (RBTree.rbt-insert k v t)>* *<proof>*

### 19.2.5 Search

**partial-function** (*heap*) *rbt-search* ::

*'a::heap,linorder*  $\Rightarrow$  (*'a, 'b::heap*) *btree*  $\Rightarrow$  *'b option Heap* **where**  
*rbt-search x b* = (*case b of*  
  *None*  $\Rightarrow$  *return None*  
  | *Some p*  $\Rightarrow$  *do* {  
    *t*  $\leftarrow$  *!p*;  
    (*if x = key t then return (Some (val t))*  
      *else if x < key t then rbt-search x (lsub t)*  
      *else rbt-search x (rsub t)*) }

**lemma** *btree-search-correct* [*hoare-triple*]:

*<btree t b \*  $\uparrow$ (rbt-sorted t)>*  
*rbt-search x b*  
*< $\lambda r. \text{btree } t \text{ } b * \uparrow(r = \text{RBTree.rbt-search } t \text{ } x)$ >*  
*<proof>*

### 19.2.6 Delete

**definition** *btree-balL* :: (*'a::heap, 'b::heap*) *btree*  $\Rightarrow$  (*'a, 'b*) *btree Heap* **where**

*btree-balL p* = (*case p of*  
  *None*  $\Rightarrow$  *return None*  
  | *Some pp*  $\Rightarrow$  *do* {  
    *t*  $\leftarrow$  *!pp*;  
    *cl-l*  $\leftarrow$  *get-color (lsub t)*;  
    *if cl-l = R then do* {  
      *set-color B (lsub t)*; — Case 1  
    *return p* }  
    *else case rsub t of*  
      *None*  $\Rightarrow$  *return p* — Case 2  
    | *Some rp*  $\Rightarrow$  *do* {  
      *rt*  $\leftarrow$  *!rp*;  
      *if cl rt = B then do* {  
        *set-color R (rsub t)*; — Case 3  
      *set-color B p*;  
    }

```

    btree-balance p}
  else case lsub rt of
    None ⇒ return p — Case 4
  | Some lrp ⇒ do {
    lrt ← !lrp;
    if cl lrt = B then do {
      set-color R (lsub rt); — Case 5
      paint R (rsub rt);
      set-color B (rsub t);
      rp' ← btree-rotate-r (rsub t);
      pp := Node (lsub t) (cl t) (key t) (val t) rp';
      p' ← btree-rotate-l p;
      t' ← !(the p');
      set-color B (lsub t');
      rp'' ← btree-balance (rsub t');
      the p' := Node (lsub t') (cl t') (key t') (val t') rp'';
      return p'}
    else return p}}})

```

**lemma** *balL-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

```

<btree (rbt.Node l R k v r) p>
  btree-balL p
  <btree (balL l k v r)>
<proof>

```

**definition** *btree-balR* :: ('a::heap, 'b::heap) btree ⇒ ('a, 'b) btree Heap **where**

```

  btree-balR p = (case p of
    None ⇒ return None
  | Some pp ⇒ do {
    t ← !pp;
    cl-r ← get-color (rsub t);
    if cl-r = R then do {
      set-color B (rsub t); — Case 1
      return p}
    else case lsub t of
      None ⇒ return p — Case 2
    | Some lp ⇒ do {
      lt ← !lp;
      if cl lt = B then do {
        set-color R (lsub t); — Case 3
        set-color B p;
        btree-balance p}
      else case rsub lt of
        None ⇒ return p — Case 4
      | Some rlp ⇒ do {
        rlt ← !rlp;
        if cl rlt = B then do {
          set-color R (rsub lt); — Case 5
          paint R (lsub lt);

```



```

    set-color B (lsub t);
    lp' ← btree-rotate-l (lsub t);
    pp := Node lp' (cl t) (key t) (val t) (rsub t);
    p' ← btree-rotate-r p;
    t' ← !(the p');
    set-color B (rsub t');
    lp'' ← btree-balance (lsub t');
    the p' := Node lp'' (cl t') (key t') (val t') (rsub t');
    return p'
  }
else return p}}})

```

**lemma** *balR-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

```

<btree (rbt.Node l R k v r) p>
  btree-balR p
  <btree (balR l k v r)>
<proof>

```

**partial-function** (*heap*) *btree-combine* ::

(*'a*::*heap*, *'b*::*heap*) *btree* ⇒ (*'a*, *'b*) *btree* ⇒ (*'a*, *'b*) *btree Heap* **where**

*btree-combine* *lp rp* =

(*if lp* = *None* then return *rp*

else *if rp* = *None* then return *lp*

else do {

*lt* ← !(the *lp*);

*rt* ← !(the *rp*);

*if cl lt* = *R* then

*if cl rt* = *R* then do {

*tmp* ← *btree-combine* (*rsub lt*) (*lsub rt*);

*cl-tm* ← *get-color tmp*;

*if cl-tm* = *R* then do {

*tmt* ← !(the *tmp*);

        the *lp* := *Node* (*lsub lt*) *R* (*key lt*) (*val lt*) (*lsub tmt*);

        the *rp* := *Node* (*rsub tmt*) *R* (*key rt*) (*val rt*) (*rsub rt*);

        the *tmp* := *Node* *lp R* (*key tmt*) (*val tmt*) *rp*;

        return *tmt*}

      else do {

        the *rp* := *Node* *tmt R* (*key rt*) (*val rt*) (*rsub rt*);

        the *lp* := *Node* (*lsub lt*) *R* (*key lt*) (*val lt*) *rp*;

        return *lp*}

    else do {

*tmp* ← *btree-combine* (*rsub lt*) *rp*;

      the *lp* := *Node* (*lsub lt*) *R* (*key lt*) (*val lt*) *tmt*;

      return *lp*}

  else *if cl rt* = *B* then do {

*tmp* ← *btree-combine* (*rsub lt*) (*lsub rt*);

*cl-tm* ← *get-color tmp*;

*if cl-tm* = *R* then do {

*tmt* ← !(the *tmp*);

      the *lp* := *Node* (*lsub lt*) *B* (*key lt*) (*val lt*) (*lsub tmt*);

```

    the rp := Node (rsub tmt) B (key rt) (val rt) (rsub rt);
    the tmp := Node lp R (key tmt) (val tmt) rp;
    return tmp}
else do {
    the rp := Node tmp B (key rt) (val rt) (rsub rt);
    the lp := Node (lsub lt) R (key lt) (val lt) rp;
    btree-balL lp}}
else do {
    tmp ← btree-combine lp (lsub rt);
    the rp := Node tmp R (key rt) (val rt) (rsub rt);
    return rp}})

```

**lemma** *combine-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

```

<btree lt lp * btree rt rp>
  btree-combine lp rp
  <btree (combine lt rt)>
  <proof>

```

**partial-function** (*heap*) *rbt-del* ::

'a::{heap,linorder} ⇒ ('a, 'b)::heap) btree ⇒ ('a, 'b) btree Heap **where**

```

rbt-del x p = (case p of
  None ⇒ return None
| Some pp ⇒ do {
  t ← !pp;
  (if x = key t then btree-combine (lsub t) (rsub t)
  else if x < key t then case lsub t of
    None ⇒ do {
      set-color R p;
      return p}
  | Some lp ⇒ do {
    lt ← !lp;
    if cl lt = B then do {
      q ← rbt-del x (lsub t);
      pp := Node q R (key t) (val t) (rsub t);
      btree-balL p }
    else do {
      q ← rbt-del x (lsub t);
      pp := Node q R (key t) (val t) (rsub t);
      return p }}}
  else case rsub t of
    None ⇒ do {
      set-color R p;
      return p}
  | Some rp ⇒ do {
    rt ← !rp;
    if cl rt = B then do {
      q ← rbt-del x (rsub t);
      pp := Node (lsub t) R (key t) (val t) q;
      btree-balR p }

```

```

else do {
  q ← rbt-del x (rsub t);
  pp := Node (lsub t) R (key t) (val t) q;
  return p }}}}

```

**lemma** *rbt-del-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

```

<btree t p>
  rbt-del x p
  <btree (del x t)>t
⟨proof⟩

```

**definition** *rbt-delete* ::

```

'a::{heap,linorder} ⇒ ('a, 'b)::heap) btree ⇒ ('a, 'b) btree Heap where
rbt-delete k p = do {
  p' ← rbt-del k p;
  paint B p';
  return p'}

```

**lemma** *rbt-delete-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

```

<btree t p>
  rbt-delete k p
  <btree (RBTREE.delete k t)>t ⟨proof⟩

```

### 19.3 Outer interface

Express Hoare triples for operations on red-black tree in terms of the mapping represented by the tree.

**definition** *rbt-map-assn* :: ('a, 'b) map ⇒ ('a::{heap,linorder}, 'b)::heap) rbt-node ref option ⇒ assn **where**

```

rbt-map-assn M p = (∃A t. btree t p * ↑(is-rbt t) * ↑(rbt-sorted t) * ↑(M = rbt-map t))
⟨ML⟩

```

**theorem** *rbt-empty-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

<emp> tree-empty <rbt-map-assn empty-map> ⟨proof⟩

```

**theorem** *rbt-insert-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

<rbt-map-assn M b> rbt-insert k v b <rbt-map-assn (M {k → v})> ⟨proof⟩

```

**theorem** *rbt-search* [hoare-triple]:

```

<rbt-map-assn M b> rbt-search x b <λr. rbt-map-assn M b * ↑(r = M⟨x⟩)>
⟨proof⟩

```

**theorem** *rbt-delete-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

<rbt-map-assn M b> rbt-delete k b <rbt-map-assn (delete-map k M)>t ⟨proof⟩

```

**end**

## 20 Implementation of arrays

```
theory Arrays-Impl
imports SepAuto ../Functional/Arrays-Ex
begin
```

Imperative implementations of common array operations.

Imperative reverse on arrays is also verified in theory Imperative\_Reverse in Imperative\_HOL/ex in the Isabelle library.

### 20.1 Array copy

```
fun array-copy :: 'a::heap array  $\Rightarrow$  'a array  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  unit Heap where
  array-copy a b 0 = (return ())
| array-copy a b (Suc n) = do {
  array-copy a b n;
  x  $\leftarrow$  Array.nth a n;
  Array.upd n x b;
  return () }
```

```
lemma array-copy-rule [hoare-triple]:
  n  $\leq$  length as  $\Longrightarrow$  n  $\leq$  length bs  $\Longrightarrow$ 
  <a  $\mapsto_a$  as * b  $\mapsto_a$  bs>
  array-copy a b n
  < $\lambda$ -. a  $\mapsto_a$  as * b  $\mapsto_a$  Arrays-Ex.array-copy as bs n>
  <proof>
```

### 20.2 Swap

```
definition swap :: 'a::heap array  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  unit Heap where
  swap a i j = do {
  x  $\leftarrow$  Array.nth a i;
  y  $\leftarrow$  Array.nth a j;
  Array.upd i y a;
  Array.upd j x a;
  return ()
}
```

```
lemma swap-rule [hoare-triple]:
  i < length xs  $\Longrightarrow$  j < length xs  $\Longrightarrow$ 
  <p  $\mapsto_a$  xs>
  swap p i j
  < $\lambda$ -. p  $\mapsto_a$  list-swap xs i j> <proof>
```

### 20.3 Reverse

```
fun rev :: 'a::heap array  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  unit Heap where
  rev a i j = (if i < j then do {
  swap a i j;
```

```

    rev a (i + 1) (j - 1)
  }
  else return ()

```

**lemma** *rev-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:  
 $j < \text{length } xs \implies$   
 $\langle p \mapsto_a xs \rangle$   
 $\text{rev } p \ i \ j$   
 $\langle \lambda-. p \mapsto_a \text{rev-swap } xs \ i \ j \rangle$   
 <proof>

Correctness of imperative reverse.

**theorem** *rev-is-rev* [hoare-triple]:  
 $xs \neq [] \implies$   
 $\langle p \mapsto_a xs \rangle$   
 $\text{rev } p \ 0 \ (\text{length } xs - 1)$   
 $\langle \lambda-. p \mapsto_a \text{List.rev } xs \rangle$  <proof>

end

## 21 Implementation of quicksort

**theory** *Quicksort-Impl*  
**imports** *Arrays-Impl ../Functional/Quicksort*  
**begin**

Imperative implementation of quicksort. Also verified in theory *Imperative\_Quicksort* in *HOL/Imperative\_HOL/ex* in the Isabelle library.

**partial-function** (*heap*) *part1* :: 'a::{heap,linorder} array  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  'a  $\Rightarrow$  nat *Heap* **where**  
 $\text{part1 } a \ l \ r \ p =$  (  
 if  $r \leq l$  then return  $r$   
 else do {  
 $v \leftarrow \text{Array.nth } a \ l$ ;  
 if  $v \leq p$  then  
    $\text{part1 } a \ (l + 1) \ r \ p$   
 else do {  
    $\text{swap } a \ l \ r$ ;  
    $\text{part1 } a \ l \ (r - 1) \ p$  } })

**lemma** *part1-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:  
 $r < \text{length } xs \implies \langle p \mapsto_a xs \rangle$   
 $\text{part1 } p \ l \ r \ a$   
 $\langle \lambda rs. p \mapsto_a \text{snd } (\text{Quicksort.part1 } xs \ l \ r \ a) * \uparrow(rs = \text{fst } (\text{Quicksort.part1 } xs \ l \ r \ a)) \rangle$   
 <proof>

Partition function

**definition** *partition* :: 'a::{heap,linorder} array ⇒ nat ⇒ nat ⇒ nat Heap **where**  
*partition a l r = do* {  
*p ← Array.nth a r;*  
*m ← part1 a l (r - 1) p;*  
*v ← Array.nth a m;*  
*m' ← return (if v ≤ p then m + 1 else m);*  
*swap a m' r;*  
*return m'*  
*}*

**lemma** *partition-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:  
 $l < r \implies r < \text{length } xs \implies \langle a \mapsto_a xs \rangle$   
*partition a l r*  
 $\langle \lambda rs. a \mapsto_a \text{snd} (\text{Quicksort.partition } xs \ l \ r) * \uparrow(rs = \text{fst} (\text{Quicksort.partition } xs \ l \ r)) \rangle$   
 ⟨proof⟩

Quicksort function

**partial-function** (*heap*) *quicksort* :: 'a::{heap,linorder} array ⇒ nat ⇒ nat ⇒ unit Heap **where**  
*quicksort a l r = do* {  
*len ← Array.len a;*  
*if l ≥ r then return ();*  
*else if r < len then do* {  
*p ← partition a l r;*  
*quicksort a l (p - 1);*  
*quicksort a (p + 1) r*  
*}*  
*else return ();*  
*}*

**lemma** *quicksort-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:  
 $r < \text{length } xs \implies \langle a \mapsto_a xs \rangle$   
*quicksort a l r*  
 $\langle \lambda -. a \mapsto_a \text{Quicksort.quicksort } xs \ l \ r \rangle$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**definition** *quicksort-all* :: ('a::{heap,linorder}) array ⇒ unit Heap **where**  
*quicksort-all a = do* {  
*n ← Array.len a;*  
*if n = 0 then return ();*  
*else quicksort a 0 (n - 1)*  
*}*

Correctness of quicksort.

**theorem** *quicksort-sorts-basic* [hoare-triple]:  
 $\langle a \mapsto_a xs \rangle$   
*quicksort-all a*  
 $\langle \lambda -. a \mapsto_a \text{sort } xs \rangle$  ⟨proof⟩

end

## 22 Implementation of union find

**theory** *Union-Find-Impl*  
  **imports** *SepAuto ../Functional/Union-Find*  
**begin**

Development follows theory `Union_Find` in [5] by Lammich and Meis.

**type-synonym** *uf* = *nat array* × *nat array*

**definition** *is-uf* :: *nat* ⇒ (*nat* × *nat*) *set* ⇒ *uf* ⇒ *assn* **where** [*rewrite-ent*]:  
  *is-uf* *n* *R* *u* = (∃ *l szl*. *snd* *u* ↦<sub>*a*</sub> *l* \* *fst* *u* ↦<sub>*a*</sub> *szl* \*  
    ↑(*ufa-invar* *l*) \* ↑(*ufa-α* *l* = *R*) \* ↑(*length* *l* = *n*) \* ↑(*length* *szl* = *n*))

**definition** *uf-init* :: *nat* ⇒ *uf Heap* **where**  
  *uf-init* *n* = *do* {  
    *l* ← *Array.of-list* [0..*n*];  
    *szl* ← *Array.new* *n* (1::*nat*);  
    *return* (*szl*, *l*)  
  }

Correctness of `uf_init`.

**theorem** *uf-init-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:  
  <*emp*> *uf-init* *n* <*is-uf* *n* (*uf-init-rel* *n*)> <*proof*>

**partial-function** (*heap*) *uf-rep-of* :: *nat array* ⇒ *nat* ⇒ *nat Heap* **where**  
  *uf-rep-of* *p* *i* = *do* {  
    *n* ← *Array.nth* *p* *i*;  
    *if* *n* = *i* *then return* *i* *else uf-rep-of* *p* *n*  
  }

**lemma** *uf-rep-of-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:  
  *ufa-invar* *l* ⇒ *i* < *length* *l* ⇒  
    <*p* ↦<sub>*a*</sub> *l*>  
    *uf-rep-of* *p* *i*  
    <λ*r*. *p* ↦<sub>*a*</sub> *l* \* ↑(*r* = *rep-of* *l* *i*)>  
<*proof*>

**partial-function** (*heap*) *uf-compress* :: *nat* ⇒ *nat* ⇒ *nat array* ⇒ *unit Heap*  
**where**

*uf-compress* *i* *ci* *p* = (  
    *if* *i* = *ci* *then return* ()  
    *else do* {  
      *ni* ← *Array.nth* *p* *i*;  
      *uf-compress* *ni* *ci* *p*;  
      *Array.upd* *i* *ci* *p*;  
    }

```

    return ()
  })

```

**lemma** *uf-compress-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

  ufa-invar l  $\implies$  i < length l  $\implies$ 
  <p  $\mapsto_a$  l>
  uf-compress i (rep-of l i) p
  < $\lambda r. \exists_A l'. p \mapsto_a l' * \uparrow(\text{ufa-invar } l' \wedge \text{length } l' = \text{length } l \wedge$ 
    ( $\forall i < \text{length } l. \text{rep-of } l' i = \text{rep-of } l i))$ >
  <proof>

```

**definition** *uf-rep-of-c* :: nat array  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat Heap **where**

```

  uf-rep-of-c p i = do {
    ci  $\leftarrow$  uf-rep-of p i;
    uf-compress i ci p;
    return ci
  }

```

**lemma** *uf-rep-of-c-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

  ufa-invar l  $\implies$  i < length l  $\implies$ 
  <p  $\mapsto_a$  l>
  uf-rep-of-c p i
  < $\lambda r. \exists_A l'. p \mapsto_a l' * \uparrow(r = \text{rep-of } l i \wedge \text{ufa-invar } l' \wedge \text{length } l' = \text{length } l \wedge$ 
    ( $\forall i < \text{length } l. \text{rep-of } l' i = \text{rep-of } l i))$ >
  <proof>

```

**definition** *uf-cmp* :: uf  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  bool Heap **where**

```

  uf-cmp u i j = do {
    n  $\leftarrow$  Array.len (snd u);
    if (i  $\geq$  n  $\vee$  j  $\geq$  n) then return False
    else do {
      ci  $\leftarrow$  uf-rep-of-c (snd u) i;
      cj  $\leftarrow$  uf-rep-of-c (snd u) j;
      return (ci = cj)
    }
  }

```

Correctness of compare.

**theorem** *uf-cmp-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

  <is-uf n R u>
  uf-cmp u i j
  < $\lambda r. \text{is-uf } n R u * \uparrow(r \longleftrightarrow (i,j) \in R)$ > <proof>

```

**definition** *uf-union* :: uf  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  uf Heap **where**

```

  uf-union u i j = do {
    ci  $\leftarrow$  uf-rep-of (snd u) i;
    cj  $\leftarrow$  uf-rep-of (snd u) j;
    if (ci = cj) then return u
    else do {

```



```

    si ← Array.nth (fst u) ci;
    sj ← Array.nth (fst u) cj;
    if si < sj then do {
      Array.upd ci cj (snd u);
      Array.upd cj (si+sj) (fst u);
      return u
    } else do {
      Array.upd cj ci (snd u);
      Array.upd ci (si+sj) (fst u);
      return u
    }
  }
}

```

Correctness of union.

**theorem** *uf-union-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:  
 $i < n \implies j < n \implies$   
 $\langle is-uf\ n\ R\ u \rangle$   
 $uf-union\ u\ i\ j$   
 $\langle is-uf\ n\ (per-union\ R\ i\ j) \rangle$   $\langle proof \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

end

## 23 Implementation of connectivity on graphs

**theory** *Connectivity-Impl*  
**imports** *Union-Find-Impl* *../Functional/Connectivity*  
**begin**

Imperative version of graph-connectivity example.

### 23.1 Constructing the connected relation

**fun** *connected-rel-imp* ::  $nat \Rightarrow (nat \times nat)\ list \Rightarrow nat \Rightarrow uf\ Heap$  **where**  
 $connected-rel-imp\ n\ es\ 0 = do\ \{ p \leftarrow uf-init\ n; return\ p \}$   
 $| connected-rel-imp\ n\ es\ (Suc\ k) = do\ \{$   
 $\ p \leftarrow connected-rel-imp\ n\ es\ k;$   
 $\ p' \leftarrow uf-union\ p\ (fst\ (es\ !\ k))\ (snd\ (es\ !\ k));$   
 $\ return\ p' \}$

**lemma** *connected-rel-imp-to-fun* [*hoare-triple*]:  
 $is-valid-graph\ n\ (set\ es) \implies k \leq length\ es \implies$   
 $\langle emp \rangle$   
 $connected-rel-imp\ n\ es\ k$   
 $\langle is-uf\ n\ (connected-rel-ind\ n\ es\ k) \rangle$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *connected-rel-imp-correct* [hoare-triple]:  
*is-valid-graph* *n* (*set es*)  $\implies$   
 <emp>  
*connected-rel-imp* *n es* (*length es*)  
 <*is-uf* *n* (*connected-rel* *n* (*set es*))> <proof>

## 23.2 Connectedness tests

Correctness of the algorithm for detecting connectivity.

**theorem** *uf-cmp-correct* [hoare-triple]:  
 <*is-uf* *n* (*connected-rel* *n* *S*) *p*>  
*uf-cmp* *p i j*  
 < $\lambda r. \text{is-uf } n \text{ (connected-rel } n \text{ } S) \text{ } p * \uparrow(r \longleftrightarrow \text{has-path } n \text{ } S \text{ } i \text{ } j)$ > <proof>

end

## 24 Implementation of dynamic arrays

**theory** *DynamicArray*  
 imports *Arrays-Impl*  
 begin

Dynamically allocated arrays.

**datatype** *'a dynamic-array* = *Dyn-Array* (*alen: nat*) (*aref: 'a array*)  
 <ML>

### 24.1 Raw assertion

**fun** *dyn-array-raw* :: *'a::heap list*  $\times$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *'a dynamic-array*  $\Rightarrow$  *assn* **where**  
*dyn-array-raw* (*xs*, *n*) (*Dyn-Array* *m a*) = (*a*  $\mapsto_a$  *xs* \*  $\uparrow(m = n)$ )  
 <ML>

**definition** *dyn-array-new* :: *'a::heap dynamic-array* *Heap* **where**  
*dyn-array-new* = do {  
*p*  $\leftarrow$  *Array.new* 5 *undefined*;  
 return (*Dyn-Array* 0 *p*)  
 }

**lemma** *dyn-array-new-rule'* [hoare-triple]:  
 <emp>  
*dyn-array-new*  
 <*dyn-array-raw* (*replicate* 5 *undefined*, 0)> <proof>

**fun** *double-length* :: *'a::heap dynamic-array*  $\Rightarrow$  *'a dynamic-array* *Heap* **where**  
*double-length* (*Dyn-Array* *al ar*) = do {  
*am*  $\leftarrow$  *Array.len* *ar*;  
*p*  $\leftarrow$  *Array.new* ( $2 * am + 1$ ) *undefined*;

```

    array-copy ar p am;
    return (Dyn-Array am p)
  }

```

**fun** *double-length-fun* :: 'a::heap list × nat ⇒ 'a list × nat **where**  
*double-length-fun* (xs, n) =  
 (Arrays-Ex.array-copy xs (replicate (2 \* n + 1) undefined) n, n)  
 ⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *double-length-rule'* [hoare-triple]:  
 length xs = n ⇒  
 <dyn-array-raw (xs, n) p>  
 double-length p  
 <dyn-array-raw (double-length-fun (xs, n))><sub>t</sub> ⟨proof⟩

**fun** *push-array-basic* :: 'a ⇒ 'a::heap dynamic-array ⇒ 'a dynamic-array Heap  
**where**  
*push-array-basic* x (Dyn-Array al ar) = do {  
 Array.upd al x ar;  
 return (Dyn-Array (al + 1) ar)  
 }

**fun** *push-array-basic-fun* :: 'a ⇒ 'a::heap list × nat ⇒ 'a list × nat **where**  
*push-array-basic-fun* x (xs, n) = (list-update xs n x, n + 1)  
 ⟨ML⟩

**lemma** *push-array-basic-rule'* [hoare-triple]:  
 n < length xs ⇒  
 <dyn-array-raw (xs, n) p>  
 push-array-basic x p  
 <dyn-array-raw (push-array-basic-fun x (xs, n))> ⟨proof⟩

**definition** *array-length* :: 'a dynamic-array ⇒ nat Heap **where**  
*array-length* d = return (alen d)

**lemma** *array-length-rule'* [hoare-triple]:  
 <dyn-array-raw (xs, n) p>  
 array-length p  
 <λr. dyn-array-raw (xs, n) p \* ↑(r = n)> ⟨proof⟩

**definition** *array-max* :: 'a::heap dynamic-array ⇒ nat Heap **where**  
*array-max* d = Array.len (aref d)

**lemma** *array-max-rule'* [hoare-triple]:  
 <dyn-array-raw (xs, n) p>  
 array-max p  
 <λr. dyn-array-raw (xs, n) p \* ↑(r = length xs)> ⟨proof⟩

**definition** *array-nth* :: 'a::heap dynamic-array ⇒ nat ⇒ 'a Heap **where**

$array\text{-}nth\ d\ i = Array.nth\ (aref\ d)\ i$

**lemma**  $array\text{-}nth\text{-}rule'$  [hoare-triple]:

$i < n \implies n \leq length\ xs \implies$   
 $\langle dyn\text{-}array\text{-}raw\ (xs,\ n)\ p \rangle$   
 $array\text{-}nth\ p\ i$   
 $\langle \lambda r. dyn\text{-}array\text{-}raw\ (xs,\ n)\ p * \uparrow(r = xs\ !\ i) \rangle \langle proof \rangle$

**definition**  $array\text{-}upd :: nat \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'a::heap\ dynamic\text{-}array \Rightarrow unit\ Heap$  **where**

$array\text{-}upd\ i\ x\ d = do\ \{ Array.upd\ i\ x\ (aref\ d); return\ () \}$

**lemma**  $array\text{-}upd\text{-}rule'$  [hoare-triple]:

$i < n \implies n \leq length\ xs \implies$   
 $\langle dyn\text{-}array\text{-}raw\ (xs,\ n)\ p \rangle$   
 $array\text{-}upd\ i\ x\ p$   
 $\langle \lambda r. dyn\text{-}array\text{-}raw\ (list\text{-}update\ xs\ i\ x,\ n)\ p \rangle \langle proof \rangle$

**definition**  $push\text{-}array :: 'a \Rightarrow 'a::heap\ dynamic\text{-}array \Rightarrow 'a\ dynamic\text{-}array\ Heap$  **where**

$push\text{-}array\ x\ p = do\ \{$   
 $\quad m \leftarrow array\text{-}max\ p;$   
 $\quad l \leftarrow array\text{-}length\ p;$   
 $\quad if\ l < m\ then\ push\text{-}array\text{-}basic\ x\ p$   
 $\quad else\ do\ \{$   
 $\quad\quad u \leftarrow double\text{-}length\ p;$   
 $\quad\quad push\text{-}array\text{-}basic\ x\ u$   
 $\quad\quad \}$   
 $\quad \}$   
 $\}$

**definition**  $pop\text{-}array :: 'a::heap\ dynamic\text{-}array \Rightarrow ('a \times 'a\ dynamic\text{-}array)\ Heap$  **where**

$pop\text{-}array\ d = do\ \{$   
 $\quad x \leftarrow Array.nth\ (aref\ d)\ (alen\ d - 1);$   
 $\quad return\ (x,\ Dyn\text{-}Array\ (alen\ d - 1)\ (aref\ d))$   
 $\quad \}$

**lemma**  $pop\text{-}array\text{-}rule'$  [hoare-triple]:

$n > 0 \implies n \leq length\ xs \implies$   
 $\langle dyn\text{-}array\text{-}raw\ (xs,\ n)\ p \rangle$   
 $pop\text{-}array\ p$   
 $\langle \lambda(x,\ r). dyn\text{-}array\text{-}raw\ (xs,\ n - 1)\ r * \uparrow(x = xs\ !\ (n - 1)) \rangle \langle proof \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

**fun**  $push\text{-}array\text{-}fun :: 'a \Rightarrow 'a::heap\ list \times nat \Rightarrow 'a\ list \times nat$  **where**

$push\text{-}array\text{-}fun\ x\ (xs,\ n) = ($   
 $\quad if\ n < length\ xs\ then\ push\text{-}array\text{-}basic\text{-}fun\ x\ (xs,\ n)$   
 $\quad else\ push\text{-}array\text{-}basic\text{-}fun\ x\ (double\text{-}length\text{-}fun\ (xs,\ n)))$

$\langle ML \rangle$

**lemma** *push-array-rule'* [hoare-triple]:

$n \leq \text{length } xs \implies$   
 $\langle \text{dyn-array-raw } (xs, n) \ p \rangle$   
 $\text{push-array } x \ p$   
 $\langle \text{dyn-array-raw } (\text{push-array-fun } x \ (xs, n)) \rangle_t \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

## 24.2 Abstract assertion

**fun** *abs-array* :: 'a::heap list  $\times$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  'a list **where**

$\text{abs-array } (xs, n) = \text{take } n \ xs$   
 $\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

**lemma** *double-length-abs* [rewrite]:

$\text{length } xs = n \implies \text{abs-array } (\text{double-length-fun } (xs, n)) = \text{abs-array } (xs, n) \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *push-array-basic-abs* [rewrite]:

$n < \text{length } xs \implies \text{abs-array } (\text{push-array-basic-fun } x \ (xs, n)) = \text{abs-array } (xs, n)$   
 $\text{@ } [x]$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *push-array-fun-abs* [rewrite]:

$n \leq \text{length } xs \implies \text{abs-array } (\text{push-array-fun } x \ (xs, n)) = \text{abs-array } (xs, n) \text{@ } [x]$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**definition** *dyn-array* :: 'a::heap list  $\Rightarrow$  'a dynamic-array  $\Rightarrow$  assn **where** [rewrite-ent]:

$\text{dyn-array } xs \ a = (\exists_{Ap}. \text{dyn-array-raw } p \ a * \uparrow(xs = \text{abs-array } p) * \uparrow(\text{snd } p \leq \text{length } (\text{fst } p)))$

**lemma** *dyn-array-new-rule* [hoare-triple]:

$\langle \text{emp} \rangle \text{dyn-array-new } \langle \text{dyn-array } [] \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *array-length-rule* [hoare-triple]:

$\langle \text{dyn-array } xs \ p \rangle$   
 $\text{array-length } p$   
 $\langle \lambda r. \text{dyn-array } xs \ p * \uparrow(r = \text{length } xs) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *array-nth-rule* [hoare-triple]:

$i < \text{length } xs \implies$   
 $\langle \text{dyn-array } xs \ p \rangle$   
 $\text{array-nth } p \ i$   
 $\langle \lambda r. \text{dyn-array } xs \ p * \uparrow(r = xs ! i) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *array-upd-rule* [hoare-triple]:

$i < \text{length } xs \implies$   
 $\langle \text{dyn-array } xs \ p \rangle$   
 $\text{array-upd } i \ x \ p$   
 $\langle \lambda r. \text{dyn-array } (\text{list-update } xs \ i \ x) \ p \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *push-array-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

$\langle \text{dyn-array } xs \ p \rangle$   
*push-array*  $x \ p$   
 $\langle \text{dyn-array } (xs \ @ \ [x]) \rangle_t \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *pop-array-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

$xs \neq [] \implies$   
 $\langle \text{dyn-array } xs \ p \rangle$   
*pop-array*  $p$   
 $\langle \lambda(x, r). \text{dyn-array } (\text{butlast } xs) \ r \ * \ \uparrow(x = \text{last } xs) \rangle$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

### 24.3 Derived operations

**definition** *array-swap* :: '*a*::heap dynamic-array  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  unit Heap **where**

```
array-swap d i j = do {  
  x ← array-nth d i;  
  y ← array-nth d j;  
  array-upd i y d;  
  array-upd j x d;  
  return ()  
}
```

**lemma** *array-swap-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

$i < \text{length } xs \implies j < \text{length } xs \implies$   
 $\langle \text{dyn-array } xs \ p \rangle$   
*array-swap*  $p \ i \ j$   
 $\langle \lambda-. \text{dyn-array } (\text{list-swap } xs \ i \ j) \ p \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**end**

## 25 Implementation of the indexed priority queue

**theory** *Indexed-PQueue-Impl*

**imports** *DynamicArray ../Functional/Indexed-PQueue*

**begin**

Imperative implementation of indexed priority queue. The data structure is also verified in [4] by Peter Lammich.

**datatype** '*a* *indexed-pqueue* =

*Indexed-PQueue* (*pqueue*: (nat  $\times$  '*a*) dynamic-array) (*index*: nat option array)  
 $\langle ML \rangle$

**fun** *idx-pqueue* :: '*a*::heap *idx-pqueue*  $\Rightarrow$  '*a* *indexed-pqueue*  $\Rightarrow$  assn **where**

*idx-pqueue* ( $xs, m$ ) (*Indexed-PQueue* *pq idx*) = (*dyn-array*  $xs \ pq \ * \ idx \ \mapsto_a \ m$ )  
 $\langle ML \rangle$

## 25.1 Basic operations

**definition** *idx-pqueue-empty* :: *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *'a::heap indexed-pqueue Heap* **where**

```

idx-pqueue-empty k = do {
  pq  $\leftarrow$  dyn-array-new;
  idx  $\leftarrow$  Array.new k None;
  return (Indexed-PQueue pq idx) }

```

**lemma** *idx-pqueue-empty-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

```

<emp>
idx-pqueue-empty n
<idx-pqueue ([], replicate n None)> <proof>

```

**definition** *idx-pqueue-nth* :: *'a::heap indexed-pqueue*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  (*nat*  $\times$  *'a*) *Heap* **where**

```

idx-pqueue-nth p i = array-nth (pqueue p) i

```

**lemma** *idx-pqueue-nth-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

```

<idx-pqueue (xs, m) p *  $\uparrow$ (i < length xs)>
idx-pqueue-nth p i
< $\lambda r$ . idx-pqueue (xs, m) p *  $\uparrow$ (r = xs ! i)> <proof>

```

**definition** *idx-nth* :: *'a::heap indexed-pqueue*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat option Heap* **where**

```

idx-nth p i = Array.nth (index p) i

```

**lemma** *idx-nth-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

```

<idx-pqueue (xs, m) p *  $\uparrow$ (i < length m)>
idx-nth p i
< $\lambda r$ . idx-pqueue (xs, m) p *  $\uparrow$ (r = m ! i)> <proof>

```

**definition** *idx-pqueue-length* :: *'a indexed-pqueue*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat Heap* **where**

```

idx-pqueue-length a = array-length (pqueue a)

```

**lemma** *idx-pqueue-length-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

```

<idx-pqueue (xs, m) p>
idx-pqueue-length p
< $\lambda r$ . idx-pqueue (xs, m) p *  $\uparrow$ (r = length xs)> <proof>

```

**definition** *idx-pqueue-swap* ::

*'a::{heap,linorder} indexed-pqueue*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *unit Heap* **where**

```

idx-pqueue-swap p i j = do {
  pr-i  $\leftarrow$  array-nth (pqueue p) i;
  pr-j  $\leftarrow$  array-nth (pqueue p) j;
  Array.upd (fst pr-i) (Some j) (index p);
  Array.upd (fst pr-j) (Some i) (index p);
  array-swap (pqueue p) i j
}

```

**lemma** *idx-pqueue-swap-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

```

i < length xs  $\Longrightarrow$  j < length xs  $\Longrightarrow$  index-of-pqueue (xs, m)  $\Longrightarrow$ 

```

$\langle \text{idx-pqueue } (xs, m) \ p \rangle$   
 $\text{idx-pqueue-swap } p \ i \ j$   
 $\langle \lambda-. \text{idx-pqueue } (\text{idx-pqueue-swap-fun } (xs, m) \ i \ j) \ p \rangle$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**definition**  $\text{idx-pqueue-push} :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow 'a::\text{heap} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ indexed-pqueue} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ indexed-pqueue}$   
*Heap where*

$\text{idx-pqueue-push } k \ v \ p = \text{do } \{$   
 $\text{len} \leftarrow \text{array-length } (pqueue \ p);$   
 $d' \leftarrow \text{push-array } (k, v) \ (pqueue \ p);$   
 $\text{Array.upd } k \ (\text{Some } \text{len}) \ (\text{index } p);$   
 $\text{return } (\text{Indexed-PQueue } d' \ (\text{index } p))$   
 $\}$

**lemma**  $\text{idx-pqueue-push-rule}$  [*hoare-triple*]:

$k < \text{length } m \Longrightarrow \neg \text{has-key-alist } xs \ k \Longrightarrow$   
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue } (xs, m) \ p \rangle$   
 $\text{idx-pqueue-push } k \ v \ p$   
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue } (\text{idx-pqueue-push-fun } k \ v \ (xs, m)) \rangle_t$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**definition**  $\text{idx-pqueue-pop} :: 'a::\text{heap} \text{ indexed-pqueue} \Rightarrow ((\text{nat} \times 'a) \times 'a \text{ indexed-pqueue})$   
*Heap where*

$\text{idx-pqueue-pop } p = \text{do } \{$   
 $(x, d') \leftarrow \text{pop-array } (pqueue \ p);$   
 $\text{Array.upd } (\text{fst } x) \ \text{None} \ (\text{index } p);$   
 $\text{return } (x, \text{Indexed-PQueue } d' \ (\text{index } p))$   
 $\}$

**lemma**  $\text{idx-pqueue-pop-rule}$  [*hoare-triple*]:

$xs \neq [] \Longrightarrow \text{index-of-pqueue } (xs, m) \Longrightarrow$   
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue } (xs, m) \ p \rangle$   
 $\text{idx-pqueue-pop } p$   
 $\langle \lambda(x, r). \text{idx-pqueue } (\text{idx-pqueue-pop-fun } (xs, m)) \ r \ * \ \uparrow(x = \text{last } xs) \rangle$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**definition**  $\text{idx-pqueue-array-upd} :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow 'a::\text{heap} \ \text{dynamic-array} \Rightarrow \text{unit}$   
*Heap where*

$\text{idx-pqueue-array-upd } i \ x \ d = \text{array-upd } i \ x \ d$

**lemma**  $\text{array-upd-idx-pqueue-rule}$  [*hoare-triple*]:

$i < \text{length } xs \Longrightarrow k = \text{fst } (xs \ ! \ i) \Longrightarrow$   
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue } (xs, m) \ p \rangle$   
 $\text{idx-pqueue-array-upd } i \ (k, v) \ (pqueue \ p)$   
 $\langle \lambda-. \text{idx-pqueue } (\text{list-update } xs \ i \ (k, v), m) \ p \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**definition**  $\text{has-key-idx-pqueue} :: \text{nat} \Rightarrow 'a::\{\text{heap, linorder}\} \ \text{indexed-pqueue} \Rightarrow \text{bool}$   
*Heap where*

$\text{has-key-idx-pqueue } k \ p = \text{do } \{$



```

i-opt ← Array.nth (index p) k;
return (i-opt ≠ None) }

```

**lemma** *has-key-idx-pqueue-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

```

k < length m ⇒ index-of-pqueue (xs, m) ⇒
<idx-pqueue (xs, m) p>
has-key-idx-pqueue k p
< $\lambda r. \text{idx-pqueue } (xs, m) \text{ } p * \uparrow(r \longleftrightarrow \text{has-key-alist } xs \text{ } k)$ > <proof>

```

<*ML*>

## 25.2 Bubble up and down

**partial-function** (*heap*) *idx-bubble-down* :: '*a*::{*heap,linorder*} *indexed-pqueue* ⇒ *nat* ⇒ *unit Heap* **where**

```

idx-bubble-down a k = do {
  len ← idx-pqueue-length a;
  (if s2 k < len then do {
    vk ← idx-pqueue-nth a k;
    vs1k ← idx-pqueue-nth a (s1 k);
    vs2k ← idx-pqueue-nth a (s2 k);
    (if snd vs1k ≤ snd vs2k then
      if snd vk > snd vs1k then
        do { idx-pqueue-swap a k (s1 k); idx-bubble-down a (s1 k) }
      else return () )
    else
      if snd vk > snd vs2k then
        do { idx-pqueue-swap a k (s2 k); idx-bubble-down a (s2 k) }
      else return () ) }
  else if s1 k < len then do {
    vk ← idx-pqueue-nth a k;
    vs1k ← idx-pqueue-nth a (s1 k);
    (if snd vk > snd vs1k then
      do { idx-pqueue-swap a k (s1 k); idx-bubble-down a (s1 k) }
      else return () ) }
  else return () }

```

**lemma** *idx-bubble-down-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

```

index-of-pqueue x ⇒
<idx-pqueue x a>
idx-bubble-down a k
< $\lambda r. \text{idx-pqueue } (idx\text{-bubble-down-fun } x \text{ } k) \text{ } a$ >
<proof>

```

**partial-function** (*heap*) *idx-bubble-up* :: '*a*::{*heap,linorder*} *indexed-pqueue* ⇒ *nat* ⇒ *unit Heap* **where**

```

idx-bubble-up a k =
  (if k = 0 then return () else do {
    len ← idx-pqueue-length a;

```

```

(if k < len then do {
  vk ← idx-pqueue-nth a k;
  vpk ← idx-pqueue-nth a (par k);
  (if snd vk < snd vpk then
    do { idx-pqueue-swap a k (par k); idx-bubble-up a (par k) }
    else return ()) }
else return ()))

```

**lemma** *idx-bubble-up-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

index-of-pqueue x ⇒
  <idx-pqueue x a>
  idx-bubble-up a k
  <λ-. idx-pqueue (idx-bubble-up-fun x k) a>
⟨proof⟩

```

### 25.3 Main operations

**definition** *delete-min-idx-pqueue* :: 'a::{heap,linorder} indexed-pqueue ⇒ ((nat × 'a) × 'a indexed-pqueue) Heap **where**

```

delete-min-idx-pqueue p = do {
  len ← idx-pqueue-length p;
  if len = 0 then raise STR "delete-min"
  else do {
    idx-pqueue-swap p 0 (len - 1);
    (x', r) ← idx-pqueue-pop p;
    idx-bubble-down r 0;
    return (x', r)
  }
}

```

**lemma** *delete-min-idx-pqueue-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

xs ≠ [] ⇒ index-of-pqueue (xs, m) ⇒
  <idx-pqueue (xs, m) p>
  delete-min-idx-pqueue p
  <λ(x, r). idx-pqueue (snd (delete-min-idx-pqueue-fun (xs, m))) r *
    ↑(x = fst (delete-min-idx-pqueue-fun (xs, m)))>
⟨proof⟩

```

**definition** *insert-idx-pqueue* :: nat ⇒ 'a::{heap,linorder} ⇒ 'a indexed-pqueue ⇒ 'a indexed-pqueue Heap **where**

```

insert-idx-pqueue k v p = do {
  p' ← idx-pqueue-push k v p;
  len ← idx-pqueue-length p';
  idx-bubble-up p' (len - 1);
  return p'
}

```

**lemma** *insert-idx-pqueue-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

k < length m ⇒ ¬has-key-alist xs k ⇒ index-of-pqueue (xs, m) ⇒

```

$\langle \text{idx-pqueue } (xs, m) \ p \rangle$   
 $\text{insert-idx-pqueue } k \ v \ p$   
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue } (\text{insert-idx-pqueue-fun } k \ v \ (xs, m)) \rangle_t$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**definition**  $\text{update-idx-pqueue} ::$   
 $\text{nat} \Rightarrow 'a::\{\text{heap}, \text{linorder}\} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ indexed-pqueue} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ indexed-pqueue Heap}$  **where**  
 $\text{update-idx-pqueue } k \ v \ p = \text{do} \{$   
 $\quad i\text{-opt} \leftarrow \text{idx-nth } p \ k;$   
 $\quad \text{case } i\text{-opt} \text{ of}$   
 $\quad \quad \text{None} \Rightarrow \text{insert-idx-pqueue } k \ v \ p$   
 $\quad | \text{Some } i \Rightarrow \text{do} \{$   
 $\quad \quad x \leftarrow \text{idx-pqueue-nth } p \ i;$   
 $\quad \quad \text{idx-pqueue-array-upd } i \ (k, v) \ (\text{pqueue } p);$   
 $\quad \quad (\text{if } \text{snd } x \leq v \text{ then do } \{\text{idx-bubble-down } p \ i; \text{return } p\}$   
 $\quad \quad \quad \text{else do } \{\text{idx-bubble-up } p \ i; \text{return } p\}) \ \}\}$

**lemma**  $\text{update-idx-pqueue-rule}$  [*hoare-triple*]:  
 $k < \text{length } m \Longrightarrow \text{index-of-pqueue } (xs, m) \Longrightarrow$   
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue } (xs, m) \ p \rangle$   
 $\text{update-idx-pqueue } k \ v \ p$   
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue } (\text{update-idx-pqueue-fun } k \ v \ (xs, m)) \rangle_t$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

## 25.4 Outer interface

Express Hoare triples for indexed priority queue operations in terms of the mapping represented by the queue.

**definition**  $\text{idx-pqueue-map} :: (\text{nat}, 'a::\{\text{heap}, \text{linorder}\}) \text{ map} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ indexed-pqueue}$   
 $\Rightarrow \text{assn}$  **where**  
 $\text{idx-pqueue-map } M \ n \ p = (\exists_{A \ xs} m. \text{idx-pqueue } (xs, m) \ p *$   
 $\quad \uparrow(\text{index-of-pqueue } (xs, m)) * \uparrow(\text{is-heap } xs) * \uparrow(M = \text{map-of-alist } xs) * \uparrow(n =$   
 $\quad \text{length } m))$   
 $\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

**lemma**  $\text{heap-implies-hd-min2}$  [*resolve*]:  
 $\text{is-heap } xs \Longrightarrow xs \neq [] \Longrightarrow (\text{map-of-alist } xs)\langle k \rangle = \text{Some } v \Longrightarrow \text{snd } (\text{hd } xs) \leq v$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**theorem**  $\text{idx-pqueue-empty-map}$  [*hoare-triple*]:  
 $\langle \text{emp} \rangle$   
 $\text{idx-pqueue-empty } n$   
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue-map empty-map } n \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**theorem**  $\text{delete-min-idx-pqueue-map}$  [*hoare-triple*]:  
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue-map } M \ n \ p * \uparrow(M \neq \text{empty-map}) \rangle$   
 $\text{delete-min-idx-pqueue } p$   
 $\langle \lambda(x, r). \text{idx-pqueue-map } (\text{delete-map } (\text{fst } x) \ M) \ n \ r * \uparrow(\text{fst } x < n) *$   
 $\quad \uparrow(\text{is-heap-min } (\text{fst } x) \ M) * \uparrow(M \langle \text{fst } x \rangle = \text{Some } (\text{snd } x)) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**theorem** *insert-idx-pqueue-map* [hoare-triple]:

$k < n \implies k \notin \text{keys-of } M \implies$   
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue-map } M \ n \ p \rangle$   
 $\text{insert-idx-pqueue } k \ v \ p$   
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue-map } (M \ \{k \rightarrow v\}) \ n \rangle_t \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**theorem** *has-key-idx-pqueue-map* [hoare-triple]:

$k < n \implies$   
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue-map } M \ n \ p \rangle$   
 $\text{has-key-idx-pqueue } k \ p$   
 $\langle \lambda r. \text{idx-pqueue-map } M \ n \ p \ * \ \uparrow(r \longleftrightarrow k \in \text{keys-of } M) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**theorem** *update-idx-pqueue-map* [hoare-triple]:

$k < n \implies$   
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue-map } M \ n \ p \rangle$   
 $\text{update-idx-pqueue } k \ v \ p$   
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue-map } (M \ \{k \rightarrow v\}) \ n \rangle_t \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle ML \rangle$

**end**

## 26 Implementation of Dijkstra's algorithm

**theory** *Dijkstra-Impl*

**imports** *Indexed-PQueue-Impl* ../Functional/Dijkstra

**begin**

Imperative implementation of Dijkstra's shortest path algorithm. The algorithm is also verified by Nordhoff and Lammich in [8].

**datatype** *dijkstra-state* = *Dijkstra-State* (*est-a*: nat array) (*heap-pq*: nat indexed-pqueue)  
 $\langle ML \rangle$

**fun** *dstate* :: *state*  $\Rightarrow$  *dijkstra-state*  $\Rightarrow$  *assn* **where**

$dstate \ (State \ e \ M) \ (Dijkstra-State \ a \ pq) = a \ \mapsto_a \ e \ * \ \text{idx-pqueue-map } M \ (\text{length } e) \ pq$   
 $\langle ML \rangle$

### 26.1 Basic operations

**fun** *dstate-pq-init* :: *graph*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat indexed-pqueue* *Heap* **where**

$dstate-pq-init \ G \ 0 = \text{idx-pqueue-empty} \ (\text{size } G)$   
 $| \ dstate-pq-init \ G \ (Suc \ k) = \text{do } \{$   
   $p \leftarrow dstate-pq-init \ G \ k;$   
   $\text{if } k > 0 \ \text{then } \text{update-idx-pqueue } k \ (\text{weight } G \ 0 \ k) \ p$   
   $\text{else } \text{return } p \}$

**lemma** *dstate-pq-init-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

$k \leq \text{size } G \implies$   
 $\langle \text{emp} \rangle$   
 $\text{dstate-pq-init } G \ k$   
 $\langle \text{idx-pqueue-map } (\text{map-constr } (\lambda i. i > 0)) (\lambda i. \text{weight } G \ 0 \ i) \ k) (\text{size } G) \rangle_t$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**definition**  $\text{dstate-init} :: \text{graph} \Rightarrow \text{dijkstra-state Heap}$  **where**

$\text{dstate-init } G = \text{do } \{$   
 $\quad a \leftarrow \text{Array.of-list } (\text{list } (\lambda i. \text{if } i = 0 \text{ then } 0 \text{ else } \text{weight } G \ 0 \ i) (\text{size } G));$   
 $\quad pq \leftarrow \text{dstate-pq-init } G \ (\text{size } G);$   
 $\quad \text{return } (\text{Dijkstra-State } a \ pq)$   
 $\}$

**lemma**  $\text{dstate-init-to-fun}$  [hoare-triple]:

$\langle \text{emp} \rangle$   
 $\text{dstate-init } G$   
 $\langle \text{dstate } (\text{dijkstra-start-state } G) \rangle_t \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**fun**  $\text{dstate-update-est} :: \text{graph} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{nat indexed-pqueue} \Rightarrow \text{nat array}$   
 $\Rightarrow \text{nat array Heap}$  **where**

$\text{dstate-update-est } G \ m \ 0 \ pq \ a = (\text{return } a)$   
 $| \text{dstate-update-est } G \ m \ (\text{Suc } k) \ pq \ a = \text{do } \{$   
 $\quad b \leftarrow \text{has-key-idx-pqueue } k \ pq;$   
 $\quad \text{if } b \text{ then do } \{$   
 $\quad \quad ek \leftarrow \text{Array.nth } a \ k;$   
 $\quad \quad em \leftarrow \text{Array.nth } a \ m;$   
 $\quad \quad a' \leftarrow \text{dstate-update-est } G \ m \ k \ pq \ a;$   
 $\quad \quad a'' \leftarrow \text{Array.upd } k \ (\text{min } (em + \text{weight } G \ m \ k) \ ek) \ a';$   
 $\quad \quad \text{return } a'' \}$   
 $\quad \text{else } \text{dstate-update-est } G \ m \ k \ pq \ a \}$

**lemma**  $\text{dstate-update-est-ind}$  [hoare-triple]:

$k \leq \text{length } e \implies m < \text{length } e \implies$   
 $\langle a \mapsto_a e * \text{idx-pqueue-map } M \ (\text{length } e) \ pq \rangle$   
 $\text{dstate-update-est } G \ m \ k \ pq \ a$   
 $\langle \lambda r. \text{dstate } (\text{State } (\text{list-update-set-impl } (\lambda i. i \in \text{keys-of } M)$   
 $\quad (\lambda i. \text{min } (e ! m + \text{weight } G \ m \ i) \ (e ! i)) \ e \ k) \ M) (\text{Dijkstra-State}$   
 $\quad r \ pq) \rangle_t$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma**  $\text{dstate-update-est-to-fun}$  [hoare-triple]:

$\langle \text{dstate } (\text{State } e \ M) (\text{Dijkstra-State } a \ pq) * \uparrow(m < \text{length } e) \rangle$   
 $\text{dstate-update-est } G \ m \ (\text{length } e) \ pq \ a$   
 $\langle \lambda r. \text{dstate } (\text{State } (\text{list-update-set } (\lambda i. i \in \text{keys-of } M)$   
 $\quad (\lambda i. \text{min } (e ! m + \text{weight } G \ m \ i) \ (e ! i)) \ e) \ M) (\text{Dijkstra-State } r \ pq) \rangle_t$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**fun**  $\text{dstate-update-heap} ::$

$\text{graph} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{nat array} \Rightarrow \text{nat indexed-pqueue} \Rightarrow \text{nat indexed-pqueue}$

**Heap where**

```

dstate-update-heap G m 0 a pq = return pq
| dstate-update-heap G m (Suc k) a pq = do {
  b ← has-key-idx-pqueue k pq;
  if b then do {
    ek ← Array.nth a k;
    pq' ← dstate-update-heap G m k a pq;
    update-idx-pqueue k ek pq' }
  else dstate-update-heap G m k a pq }

```

**lemma** *dstate-update-heap-ind* [hoare-triple]:

```

k ≤ length e ⇒ m < length e ⇒
<a ↦a e * idx-pqueue-map M (length e) pq>
dstate-update-heap G m k a pq
<λr. dstate (State e (map-update-all-impl (λi. e ! i) M k)) (Dijkstra-State a
r)>t
⟨proof⟩

```

**lemma** *dstate-update-heap-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

```

m < length e ⇒
∀ i ∈ keys-of M. i < length e ⇒
<dstate (State e M) (Dijkstra-State a pq)>
dstate-update-heap G m (length e) a pq
<λr. dstate (State e (map-update-all (λi. e ! i) M)) (Dijkstra-State a r)>t
⟨proof⟩

```

**fun** *dijkstra-extract-min* :: *dijkstra-state* ⇒ (*nat* × *dijkstra-state*) **Heap where**

```

dijkstra-extract-min (Dijkstra-State a pq) = do {
  (x, pq') ← delete-min-idx-pqueue pq;
  return (fst x, Dijkstra-State a pq') }

```

**lemma** *dijkstra-extract-min-rule* [hoare-triple]:

```

M ≠ empty-map ⇒
<dstate (State e M) (Dijkstra-State a pq)>
dijkstra-extract-min (Dijkstra-State a pq)
<λ(m, r). dstate (State e (delete-map m M)) r * ↑(m < length e) * ↑(is-heap-min
m M)>t ⟨proof⟩

```

⟨ML⟩

## 26.2 Main operations

**fun** *dijkstra-step-impl* :: *graph* ⇒ *dijkstra-state* ⇒ *dijkstra-state* **Heap where**

```

dijkstra-step-impl G (Dijkstra-State a pq) = do {
  (x, S') ← dijkstra-extract-min (Dijkstra-State a pq);
  a' ← dstate-update-est G x (size G) (heap-pq S') (est-a S');
  pq'' ← dstate-update-heap G x (size G) a' (heap-pq S');
  return (Dijkstra-State a' pq'') }

```

**lemma** *dijkstra-step-impl-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:

$heap\ S \neq\ empty\_map \implies inv\ G\ S \implies$   
 $\langle dstate\ S\ (Dijkstra-State\ a\ pq) \rangle$   
 $dijkstra\_step\_impl\ G\ (Dijkstra-State\ a\ pq)$   
 $\langle \lambda r. \exists_A S'. dstate\ S'\ r * \uparrow(is\_dijkstra\_step\ G\ S\ S') \rangle_t \langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *dijkstra-step-impl-correct* [hoare-triple]:

$heap\ S \neq\ empty\_map \implies inv\ G\ S \implies$   
 $\langle dstate\ S\ p \rangle$   
 $dijkstra\_step\_impl\ G\ p$   
 $\langle \lambda r. \exists_A S'. dstate\ S'\ r * \uparrow(inv\ G\ S') * \uparrow(card\ (unknown\_set\ S') = card\ (unknown\_set\ S) - 1) \rangle_t \langle proof \rangle$

**fun** *dijkstra-loop* :: *graph*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *dijkstra-state*  $\Rightarrow$  *dijkstra-state* *Heap* **where**

$dijkstra\_loop\ G\ 0\ p = (return\ p)$   
 $|\ dijkstra\_loop\ G\ (Suc\ k)\ p = do\ \{$   
 $\quad p' \leftarrow dijkstra\_step\_impl\ G\ p;$   
 $\quad p'' \leftarrow dijkstra\_loop\ G\ k\ p';$   
 $\quad return\ p''\ \}$

**lemma** *dijkstra-loop-correct* [hoare-triple]:

$\langle dstate\ S\ p * \uparrow(inv\ G\ S) * \uparrow(n \leq card\ (unknown\_set\ S)) \rangle$   
 $dijkstra\_loop\ G\ n\ p$   
 $\langle \lambda r. \exists_A S'. dstate\ S'\ r * \uparrow(inv\ G\ S') * \uparrow(card\ (unknown\_set\ S') = card\ (unknown\_set\ S) - n) \rangle_t$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**definition** *dijkstra* :: *graph*  $\Rightarrow$  *dijkstra-state* *Heap* **where**

$dijkstra\ G = do\ \{$   
 $\quad p \leftarrow dstate\_init\ G;$   
 $\quad dijkstra\_loop\ G\ (size\ G - 1)\ p\ \}$

Correctness of Dijkstra's algorithm.

**theorem** *dijkstra-correct* [hoare-triple]:

$size\ G > 0 \implies$   
 $\langle emp \rangle$   
 $dijkstra\ G$   
 $\langle \lambda r. \exists_A S. dstate\ S\ r * \uparrow(inv\ G\ S) * \uparrow(unknown\_set\ S = \{\}) *$   
 $\quad \uparrow(\forall i \in verts\ G. has\_dist\ G\ 0\ i \wedge est\ S\ !\ i = dist\ G\ 0\ i) \rangle_t \langle proof \rangle$

**end**

## 27 Implementation of interval tree

**theory** *IntervalTree-Impl*

**imports** *SepAuto* *../Functional/Interval-Tree*

**begin**

Imperative version of interval tree.

## 27.1 Interval and IdxInterval

**fun** *interval-encode* :: ('a::heap) *interval*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat* **where**  
  *interval-encode* (*Interval* *l h*) = *to-nat* (*l*, *h*)

**instance** *interval* :: (heap) heap  
  ⟨*proof*⟩

**fun** *idx-interval-encode* :: ('a::heap) *idx-interval*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat* **where**  
  *idx-interval-encode* (*IdxInterval* *it i*) = *to-nat* (*it*, *i*)

**instance** *idx-interval* :: (heap) heap  
  ⟨*proof*⟩

## 27.2 Tree nodes

**datatype** 'a *node* =  
  *Node* (*lsub*: 'a *node ref option*) (*val*: 'a *idx-interval*) (*tmax*: *nat*) (*rsub*: 'a *node ref option*)  
  ⟨*ML*⟩

**fun** *node-encode* :: ('a::heap) *node*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat* **where**  
  *node-encode* (*Node* *l v m r*) = *to-nat* (*l*, *v*, *m*, *r*)

**instance** *node* :: (heap) heap  
  ⟨*proof*⟩

**fun** *int-tree* :: *interval-tree*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat node ref option*  $\Rightarrow$  *assn* **where**  
  *int-tree* *Tip* *p* =  $\uparrow$ (*p* = *None*)  
  | *int-tree* (*interval-tree.Node* *lt v m rt*) (*Some* *p*) = ( $\exists$  *Alp rp*. *p*  $\mapsto_r$  *Node lp v m rp*  
  \* *int-tree* *lt lp* \* *int-tree* *rt rp*)  
  | *int-tree* (*interval-tree.Node* *lt v m rt*) *None* = *false*  
  ⟨*ML*⟩

**lemma** *int-tree-Tip* [*forward-ent*]: *int-tree* *Tip* *p*  $\Longrightarrow_A$   $\uparrow$ (*p* = *None*) ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *int-tree-Node* [*forward-ent*]:  
  *int-tree* (*interval-tree.Node* *lt v m rt*) *p*  $\Longrightarrow_A$  ( $\exists$  *Alp rp*. *the* *p*  $\mapsto_r$  *Node lp v m rp*  
  \* *int-tree* *lt lp* \* *int-tree* *rt rp* \*  $\uparrow$ (*p*  $\neq$  *None*))  
  ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *int-tree-none*: *emp*  $\Longrightarrow_A$  *int-tree interval-tree.Tip* *None* ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *int-tree-constr-ent*:  
  *p*  $\mapsto_r$  *Node lp v m rp* \* *int-tree* *lt lp* \* *int-tree* *rt rp*  $\Longrightarrow_A$  *int-tree* (*interval-tree.Node*  
  *lt v m rt*) (*Some* *p*) ⟨*proof*⟩  
  
  ⟨*ML*⟩

**type-synonym** *int-tree* = *nat node ref option*



## 27.3 Operations

### 27.3.1 Basic operation

**definition** *int-tree-empty* :: *int-tree Heap* **where**  
*int-tree-empty* = return None

**lemma** *int-tree-empty-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:  
<emp> *int-tree-empty* <*int-tree Tip*> <proof>

**definition** *int-tree-is-empty* :: *int-tree*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool Heap* **where**  
*int-tree-is-empty* b = return (b = None)

**lemma** *int-tree-is-empty-rule* [hoare-triple]:  
<*int-tree t b*>  
*int-tree-is-empty* b  
< $\lambda r. \text{int-tree } t \ b \ * \ \uparrow(r \longleftrightarrow t = \text{Tip})$ > <proof>

**definition** *get-tmax* :: *int-tree*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat Heap* **where**  
*get-tmax* b = (case b of  
  None  $\Rightarrow$  return 0  
  | Some p  $\Rightarrow$  do {  
    t  $\leftarrow$  !p;  
    return (tmax t) })

**lemma** *get-tmax-rule* [hoare-triple]:  
<*int-tree t b*> *get-tmax* b < $\lambda r. \text{int-tree } t \ b \ * \ \uparrow(r = \text{interval-tree.tmax } t)$ >  
<proof>

**definition** *compute-tmax* :: *nat idx-interval*  $\Rightarrow$  *int-tree*  $\Rightarrow$  *int-tree*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat Heap*  
**where**  
*compute-tmax* it l r = do {  
  lm  $\leftarrow$  *get-tmax* l;  
  rm  $\leftarrow$  *get-tmax* r;  
  return (max3 it lm rm)  
}

**lemma** *compute-tmax-rule* [hoare-triple]:  
<*int-tree t1 b1* \* *int-tree t2 b2*>  
*compute-tmax* it b1 b2  
< $\lambda r. \text{int-tree } t1 \ b1 \ * \ \text{int-tree } t2 \ b2 \ * \ \uparrow(r = \text{max3 it (interval-tree.tmax } t1) \ (\text{interval-tree.tmax } t2))$ >  
<proof>

**definition** *int-tree-constr* :: *int-tree*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat idx-interval*  $\Rightarrow$  *int-tree*  $\Rightarrow$  *int-tree Heap*  
**where**  
*int-tree-constr* lp v rp = do {  
  m  $\leftarrow$  *compute-tmax* v lp rp;  
  p  $\leftarrow$  ref (Node lp v m rp);  
  return (Some p) }

**lemma** *int-tree-constr-rule* [hoare-triple]:  
 <int-tree lt lp \* int-tree rt rp>  
 int-tree-constr lp v rp  
 <int-tree (interval-tree.Node lt v (max3 v (interval-tree.tmax lt) (interval-tree.tmax  
 rt)) rt)>  
 ⟨proof⟩

### 27.3.2 Insertion

**partial-function** (*heap*) *insert-impl* :: nat idx-interval ⇒ int-tree ⇒ int-tree Heap  
**where**

```

insert-impl v b = (case b of
  None ⇒ int-tree-constr None v None
| Some p ⇒ do {
  t ← !p;
  (if v = val t then do {
    return (Some p) }
  else if v < val t then do {
    q ← insert-impl v (lsub t);
    m ← compute-tmax (val t) q (rsub t);
    p := Node q (val t) m (rsub t);
    return (Some p) }
  else do {
    q ← insert-impl v (rsub t);
    m ← compute-tmax (val t) (lsub t) q;
    p := Node (lsub t) (val t) m q;
    return (Some p) }}}}

```

**lemma** *int-tree-insert-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:  
 <int-tree t b>  
 insert-impl v b  
 <int-tree (insert v t)>  
 ⟨proof⟩

### 27.3.3 Deletion

**partial-function** (*heap*) *int-tree-del-min* :: int-tree ⇒ (nat idx-interval × int-tree)  
 Heap **where**

```

int-tree-del-min b = (case b of
  None ⇒ raise STR "del-min: empty tree"
| Some p ⇒ do {
  t ← !p;
  (if lsub t = None then
    return (val t, rsub t)
  else do {
    r ← int-tree-del-min (lsub t);
    m ← compute-tmax (val t) (snd r) (rsub t);
    p := Node (snd r) (val t) m (rsub t);
    return (fst r, Some p) }}}}

```

**lemma** *int-tree-del-min-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:  
 $\langle \text{int-tree } t \ b \ * \ \uparrow(b \neq \text{None}) \rangle$   
*int-tree-del-min*  $b$   
 $\langle \lambda r. \text{int-tree } (\text{snd } (\text{del-min } t)) \ (\text{snd } r) \ * \ \uparrow(\text{fst}(r) = \text{fst } (\text{del-min } t)) \rangle_t$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**definition** *int-tree-del-elt* :: *int-tree*  $\Rightarrow$  *int-tree Heap* **where**

*int-tree-del-elt*  $b = (\text{case } b \ \text{of}$   
 $\text{None} \Rightarrow \text{raise STR "del-elt: empty tree"}$   
 $| \text{Some } p \Rightarrow \text{do } \{$   
 $\quad t \leftarrow !p;$   
 $\quad (\text{if } \text{lsub } t = \text{None} \text{ then return } (\text{rsub } t)$   
 $\quad \text{else if } \text{rsub } t = \text{None} \text{ then return } (\text{lsub } t)$   
 $\quad \text{else do } \{$   
 $\quad \quad r \leftarrow \text{int-tree-del-min } (\text{rsub } t);$   
 $\quad \quad m \leftarrow \text{compute-tmax } (\text{fst } r) \ (\text{lsub } t) \ (\text{snd } r);$   
 $\quad \quad p := \text{Node } (\text{lsub } t) \ (\text{fst } r) \ m \ (\text{snd } r);$   
 $\quad \quad \text{return } (\text{Some } p) \ \} \ \}$   
 $\quad \text{return } (\text{Some } p) \ \} \ \}$

**lemma** *int-tree-del-elt-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:  
 $\langle \text{int-tree } (\text{interval-tree.Node } lt \ v \ m \ rt) \ b \rangle$   
*int-tree-del-elt*  $b$   
 $\langle \text{int-tree } (\text{delete-elt-tree } (\text{interval-tree.Node } lt \ v \ m \ rt)) \rangle_t \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**partial-function** (*heap*) *delete-impl* :: *nat idx-interval*  $\Rightarrow$  *int-tree*  $\Rightarrow$  *int-tree Heap*  
**where**

*delete-impl*  $x \ b = (\text{case } b \ \text{of}$   
 $\text{None} \Rightarrow \text{return None}$   
 $| \text{Some } p \Rightarrow \text{do } \{$   
 $\quad t \leftarrow !p;$   
 $\quad (\text{if } x = \text{val } t \ \text{then do } \{$   
 $\quad \quad r \leftarrow \text{int-tree-del-elt } b;$   
 $\quad \quad \text{return } r \ \}$   
 $\quad \text{else if } x < \text{val } t \ \text{then do } \{$   
 $\quad \quad q \leftarrow \text{delete-impl } x \ (\text{lsub } t);$   
 $\quad \quad m \leftarrow \text{compute-tmax } (\text{val } t) \ q \ (\text{rsub } t);$   
 $\quad \quad p := \text{Node } q \ (\text{val } t) \ m \ (\text{rsub } t);$   
 $\quad \quad \text{return } (\text{Some } p) \ \}$   
 $\quad \text{else do } \{$   
 $\quad \quad q \leftarrow \text{delete-impl } x \ (\text{rsub } t);$   
 $\quad \quad m \leftarrow \text{compute-tmax } (\text{val } t) \ (\text{lsub } t) \ q;$   
 $\quad \quad p := \text{Node } (\text{lsub } t) \ (\text{val } t) \ m \ q;$   
 $\quad \quad \text{return } (\text{Some } p) \ \} \ \}$   
 $\quad \text{return } (\text{Some } p) \ \} \ \}$

**lemma** *int-tree-delete-to-fun* [hoare-triple]:  
 $\langle \text{int-tree } t \ b \rangle$   
*delete-impl*  $x \ b$   
 $\langle \text{int-tree } (\text{delete } x \ t) \rangle_t$

$\langle proof \rangle$

### 27.3.4 Search

**partial-function** (*heap*) *search-impl* :: *nat interval*  $\Rightarrow$  *int-tree*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool Heap* **where**

```
search-impl x b = (case b of
  None  $\Rightarrow$  return False
| Some p  $\Rightarrow$  do {
  t  $\leftarrow$  !p;
  (if is-overlap (int (val t)) x then return True
  else case lsub t of
    None  $\Rightarrow$  do { b  $\leftarrow$  search-impl x (rsub t); return b }
  | Some lp  $\Rightarrow$  do {
    lt  $\leftarrow$  !lp;
    if tmax lt  $\geq$  low x then
      do { b  $\leftarrow$  search-impl x (lsub t); return b }
    else
      do { b  $\leftarrow$  search-impl x (rsub t); return b } } } }
```

**lemma** *search-impl-correct* [*hoare-triple*]:

```
<int-tree t b>
  search-impl x b
  < $\lambda r. \text{int-tree } t b * \uparrow(r \longleftrightarrow \text{search } t x)$ >
 $\langle proof \rangle$ 
```

## 27.4 Outer interface

Express Hoare triples for operations on interval tree in terms of the set of intervals represented by the tree.

**definition** *int-tree-set* :: *nat idx-interval set*  $\Rightarrow$  *int-tree*  $\Rightarrow$  *assn* **where**

```
int-tree-set S p = ( $\exists_A t. \text{int-tree } t p * \uparrow(\text{is-interval-tree } t) * \uparrow(S = \text{tree-set } t)$ )
 $\langle ML \rangle$ 
```

**theorem** *int-tree-empty-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

```
<emp> int-tree-empty <int-tree-set {}>  $\langle proof \rangle$ 
```

**theorem** *int-tree-insert-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

```
<int-tree-set S b *  $\uparrow(\text{is-interval } (\text{int } x))$ >
  insert-impl x b
  <int-tree-set (S  $\cup$  {x})>  $\langle proof \rangle$ 
```

**theorem** *int-tree-delete-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

```
<int-tree-set S b *  $\uparrow(\text{is-interval } (\text{int } x))$ >
  delete-impl x b
  <int-tree-set (S - {x})>t  $\langle proof \rangle$ 
```

**theorem** *int-tree-search-rule* [*hoare-triple*]:

```
<int-tree-set S b *  $\uparrow(\text{is-interval } x)$ >
  search-impl x b
```

$\langle \lambda r. \text{int-tree-set } S \ b \ * \ \uparrow(r \longleftrightarrow \text{has-overlap } S \ x) \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

**end**

## 28 Implementation of rectangle intersection

**theory** *Rect-Intersect-Impl*

**imports** *../Functional/Rect-Intersect IntervalTree-Impl Quicksort-Impl*

**begin**

Imperative version of rectangle-intersection algorithm.

### 28.1 Operations

**fun** *operation-encode* :: ('a::heap) operation  $\Rightarrow$  nat **where**

*operation-encode oper* =

(case oper of *INS* p i n  $\Rightarrow$  to-nat (is-INS oper, p, i, n)  
| *DEL* p i n  $\Rightarrow$  to-nat (is-INS oper, p, i, n))

**instance** *operation* :: (heap) heap

$\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

### 28.2 Initial state

**definition** *rect-inter-init* :: nat rectangle list  $\Rightarrow$  nat operation array Heap **where**

*rect-inter-init* rects = do {  
  p  $\leftarrow$  Array.of-list (ins-ops rects @ del-ops rects);  
  quicksort-all p;  
  return p }

$\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

**lemma** *rect-inter-init-rule* [hoare-triple]:

$\langle \text{emp} \rangle \text{rect-inter-init } \text{rects} \langle \lambda p. p \mapsto_a \text{all-ops } \text{rects} \rangle \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

$\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

**definition** *rect-inter-next* :: nat operation array  $\Rightarrow$  int-tree  $\Rightarrow$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  int-tree Heap

**where**

*rect-inter-next* a b k = do {  
  oper  $\leftarrow$  Array.nth a k;  
  if is-INS oper then  
    IntervalTree-Impl.insert-impl (IdxInterval (op-int oper) (op-idx oper)) b  
  else  
    IntervalTree-Impl.delete-impl (IdxInterval (op-int oper) (op-idx oper)) b }

**lemma** *op-int-is-interval*:

*is-rect-list* rects  $\Longrightarrow$  ops = all-ops rects  $\Longrightarrow$  k < length ops  $\Longrightarrow$   
*is-interval* (op-int (ops ! k))

$\langle \text{proof} \rangle$   
 $\langle \text{ML} \rangle$

**lemma** *rect-inter-next-rule* [hoare-triple]:  
 $\text{is-rect-list } \text{rects} \implies k < \text{length } (\text{all-ops } \text{rects}) \implies$   
 $\langle a \mapsto_a \text{all-ops } \text{rects} * \text{int-tree-set } S \ b \rangle$   
 $\text{rect-inter-next } a \ b \ k$   
 $\langle \lambda r. a \mapsto_a \text{all-ops } \text{rects} * \text{int-tree-set } (\text{apply-ops-k-next } \text{rects } S \ k) \ r \rangle_t \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**partial-function** (*heap*) *rect-inter-impl* ::  
 $\text{nat operation array} \Rightarrow \text{int-tree} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{bool Heap}$  **where**  
 $\text{rect-inter-impl } a \ b \ k = \text{do } \{$   
 $n \leftarrow \text{Array.len } a;$   
 $(\text{if } k \geq n \text{ then return False}$   
 $\text{else do } \{$   
 $\text{oper} \leftarrow \text{Array.nth } a \ k;$   
 $(\text{if is-INS } \text{oper} \text{ then do } \{$   
 $\text{overlap} \leftarrow \text{IntervalTree-Impl.search-impl } (\text{op-int } \text{oper}) \ b;$   
 $\text{if } \text{overlap} \text{ then return True}$   
 $\text{else if } k = n - 1 \text{ then return False}$   
 $\text{else do } \{$   
 $b' \leftarrow \text{rect-inter-next } a \ b \ k;$   
 $\text{rect-inter-impl } a \ b' \ (k + 1)\}$   
 $\text{else}$   
 $\text{if } k = n - 1 \text{ then return False}$   
 $\text{else do } \{$   
 $b' \leftarrow \text{rect-inter-next } a \ b \ k;$   
 $\text{rect-inter-impl } a \ b' \ (k + 1)\}\}\}\}$

**lemma** *rect-inter-to-fun-ind* [hoare-triple]:  
 $\text{is-rect-list } \text{rects} \implies k < \text{length } (\text{all-ops } \text{rects}) \implies$   
 $\langle a \mapsto_a \text{all-ops } \text{rects} * \text{int-tree-set } S \ b \rangle$   
 $\text{rect-inter-impl } a \ b \ k$   
 $\langle \lambda r. a \mapsto_a \text{all-ops } \text{rects} * \uparrow(r \longleftrightarrow \text{rect-inter } \text{rects } S \ k) \rangle_t$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**definition** *rect-inter-all* ::  $\text{nat rectangle list} \Rightarrow \text{bool Heap}$  **where**  
 $\text{rect-inter-all } \text{rects} =$   
 $(\text{if } \text{rects} = [] \text{ then return False}$   
 $\text{else do } \{$   
 $a \leftarrow \text{rect-inter-init } \text{rects};$   
 $b \leftarrow \text{int-tree-empty};$   
 $\text{rect-inter-impl } a \ b \ 0 \}$

Correctness of rectangle intersection algorithm.

**theorem** *rect-inter-all-correct*:  
 $\text{is-rect-list } \text{rects} \implies$   
 $\langle \text{emp} \rangle$   
 $\text{rect-inter-all } \text{rects}$

$\langle \lambda r. \uparrow(r = \text{has-rect-overlap } \text{rects}) \rangle_t \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**end**

## References

- [1] L. Bulwahn, A. Krauss, F. Haftmann, L. Erkök, and J. Matthews. Imperative functional programming with isabelle/hol. In O. A. Mohamed, C. Muñoz, and S. Tahar, editors, *Theorem Proving in Higher Order Logics*, pages 134–149, Berlin, Heidelberg, 2008. Springer Berlin Heidelberg.
- [2] T. H. Cormen, C. E. Leiserson, R. L. Rivest, and C. Stein. Introduction to algorithms third edition. 2009.
- [3] P. Lammich. Collections framework. *Archive of Formal Proofs*, Nov. 2009. <http://isa-afp.org/entries/Collections.html>, Formal proof development.
- [4] P. Lammich. The imperative refinement framework. *Archive of Formal Proofs*, Aug. 2016. [http://isa-afp.org/entries/Refine\\_Imperative\\_HOL.html](http://isa-afp.org/entries/Refine_Imperative_HOL.html), Formal proof development.
- [5] P. Lammich and R. Meis. A separation logic framework for imperative hol. *Archive of Formal Proofs*, Nov. 2012. [http://isa-afp.org/entries/Separation\\_Logic\\_Imperative\\_HOL.html](http://isa-afp.org/entries/Separation_Logic_Imperative_HOL.html), Formal proof development.
- [6] T. Nipkow. Automatic functional correctness proofs for functional search trees. In J. C. Blanchette and S. Merz, editors, *Interactive Theorem Proving*, pages 307–322, Cham, 2016. Springer International Publishing.
- [7] T. Nipkow. Programming and proving in isabelle/hol. 2018.
- [8] B. Nordhoff and P. Lammich. Dijkstra’s shortest path algorithm. *Archive of Formal Proofs*, Jan. 2012. [http://isa-afp.org/entries/Dijkstra\\_Shortest\\_Path.html](http://isa-afp.org/entries/Dijkstra_Shortest_Path.html), Formal proof development.
- [9] B. Zhan. Efficient verification of imperative programs using auto2. In D. Beyer and M. Huisman, editors, *TACAS 2018*, pages 23–40, 2018.